Acquired 1976

The Gift of

Russell Arundel

TD racing

a.

DINDER COTTAGE,
NR WELLS,
SOMERSET.

7th July 1933

Dear W Taylor,

I hope you and Mrs Taylor had a nice drive home last-evening and that your car will soon be in commission again. I am enclosing the two books that I mentioned and hope they may prove of some interest to you. I think right over the name of the Author not a long way out over the date of publication

(h) 2 Vols.

Scarce

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF

THE ENGLISH RACE HORSE.

(h) 2 Vols.

45

Scarce

John's father on his 63rd birthday
John de Beresford in Lut. P. 204

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF THE

ENGLISH RACE HORSE:

IN A

SERIES OF ROUGH NOTES.

BY

RICHARD DARVILL, V.S.,

LATE OF THE 7TH HUSSARS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

THIRD EDITION.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY JAMES RIDGWAY, 169, PICCADILLY.
1846.

LONDON:
R. HODSON, PRINTER, 90, HOLBORN HILL, LONDON.

DEDICATED, BY PERMISSION,

TO THE

NOBLEMEN AND GENTLEMEN

OF THE

JOCKEY CLUB.

TO THE

MEMBERS OF THE JOCKEY CLUB.

MY LORDS AND GENTLEMEN,

Deeply impressed with gratitude for the honor you have conferred, by permitting me to dedicate to the Members of the Jockey Club, the first, or introductory part of my Work, on Training the English Race-Horse, I avail myself of that permission, satisfied that none can so well appreciate any merit which it may possess.

The early part of my life was passed in the employ of persons versed in Racing, and I should indeed feel proud, could my humble endeavours add to the art so highly patronised by you.

In the present Volume, I have promulgated those

ideas on the subject, which were imbibed in youth, and matured at a more advanced age, by long and serious reflection. Should I have succeeded in attaining the object of my wishes and ambition, it is only from you, who will fairly judge of my exertions, that I can hope for approbation. Others, I will admit, might have treated the subject with more ability; but I am confident that none can have the science of Horse Racing more truly at heart than he who has the honor to subscribe himself,

My Lords and Gentlemen,

Your most obliged

And very humble Servant,

R. DARVILL.

Jan. 1838.

CONTENTS.

Introduction 1

CHAPTER I.

On the Stables, &c. 21

CHAPTER II.

On Gentlemen's private Training Stables . . . 70

CHAPTER III.

On Ventilation 77

CHAPTER IV.

On the Distemper 82

CHAPTER V.

On Food 90

CHAPTER VI.

On Water 101

CHAPTER VII.

On Physic 107

CHAPTER VIII.

On Physic (continuation) 129

CHAPTER IX.

On Clothing, &c. 155

CHAPTER X.

On Training Ground 182

CHAPTER XI.

On the Race Course 201

CHAPTER XII.

On Saddle-horse Grooms, and Boys 217

CHAPTER XIII.

On Training Grooms, and Exercise Boys . . . 228

CHAPTER XIV.

On Dressing Race Horses 238

CHAPTER XV.

On the size of different Reins 248

CHAPTER XVI.

On Riding a Craving Horse in his Sweat . . . 253

CHAPTER XVII.

On Riding a Free-going Horse in his Sweat . . 259

CHAPTER XVIII.

On Riding a Flighty Horse in his Exercise and Sweat . 276

CHAPTER XIX.

On the Pull and Hustle 274

CHAPTER XX.

On the Duties of the Head Lad 283

CHAPTER XXI.

On the Duties of Public and Private Training Grooms and Jockeys 285

CHAPTER XXII.

On the Treatment of Horses' Feet, and on Shoeing . . 290

CHAPTER XXIII.

On Plating Race-horses 328

CHAPTER XXIV.

On Breaking Racing Colts 347

INTRODUCTION.

It may appear strange to my readers, and I confess it has appeared so to me, that, among the numerous works which, from time to time, have issued from the press, on the nature and general treatment of Horses, no treatise should have been given on the TRAINING of the English Race-horse. Such an omission, I am convinced, could not have arisen from an unbelief in the importance attached to the subject; it may, I think, be rather attributed to a conscious deficiency in practical knowledge among authors, who, in other respects, might be competent to the task.

The training of race-horses at the establishments at Newmarket, and at various other well-conducted race-horse stables, has long since been ranked as a science, and it may, perhaps, be said to have attained perfection. Yet the public are comparatively unacquainted with the manner in which that noble animal, the race-horse, is brought into the admirable condition in which he is exhibited at the post.

The secrecy observed by training grooms (and which is highly necessary) in the management of their horses, as well in the feeding and working of them, as in attending to their different tempers and constitutions, and to the nature and length of the ground on which they are either to exercise or run, would appear almost incredible. Indeed, so remarkable is this, that it is quite impossible for any one who has not been brought up in racing stables, even to form a correct idea of the discipline and precision observed.

I beg, however, that it may be understood, I do not presume to write for the information of such training grooms as are found in the stables above-mentioned. These men enter the stables at an early period of life; and if they have been so fortunate as to have been under training grooms of experience and sound judgment,—and if they have made their observations correctly,—nothing can exceed their practical knowledge. Should, however, any part of the following work be found to contain information that may be deemed acceptable by trainers in high practice, I shall be extremely happy.

My readers are aware, that of late years, it has been the custom with many gentlemen, belonging to different hunts about the country, to make up races for the purpose of running their horses in the spring, at the conclusion of the hunting season. Some of these gentlemen, from the good opinion they may have formed of the breed and speed of their hacks, have

been induced to enter them in hack-stakes; and where there have been conveniences for the purpose, such horses have generally been trained at home, by hunting or saddle-horse grooms. I have known some gentlemen who, from the attention they have paid to their horses during the hunting season, have considered themselves judges of their condition; and from this circumstance, have now and then been induced to superintend the training of their hunters or hacks. Other gentlemen, who have not entertained quite so good an opinion of their own knowledge in this particular have wisely sent their horses to regular training stables; whilst others, again, have, on similar occasions, kept their horses at home, and have confided the entire management of them to their hunting or saddle-horse grooms.

It is for the information of such gentlemen and their grooms, that this work is principally undertaken; and although I have adhered, or rather shall adhere, strictly to the practical rules and regulations of training thorough-bred horses, yet the line may be drawn so as to enable hunting grooms (aided by the experiene they have had) to train either half-bred or thorough-bred horses, and to bring them into a much more fit state to race, than, as far as I have generally perceived, they are in the habit of doing.

But I will just remark, that whenever gentlemen have their horses engaged to run in a match of any importance,—when the powers of the horses may be deemed nearly equal, or when they may have been

brought to that point by the weights to be put up;—or more particularly, if such horses should be entered to run for public money at any of the annual meetings, where they would, of course, have to meet horses trained by regular trainers, whose practical knowledge must naturally surpass that of a hunting groom,—it would be advisable, under such circumstances, for gentlemen to send their horses in due time to regular training stables to be got ready to run, unless they keep a private training groom of their own; not only because men in high practice of training are better judges of the art, but because they have more convenient stables, and good riding boys, with proper ground to work their horses on.

Before I proceed further, it may be well to give some little account of myself, to enable my readers to judge of the opportunities I have had of becoming acquainted with the art which forms the subject of the following treatise. This I deem necessary, as it might otherwise appear rather extraordinary that a person holding the appointment of Veterinary Surgeon in His Majesty's Service should possess the knowledge requisite to write upon the training of race-horses. From the brief account, however, which I propose giving of the early part of my life, it will appear that the experience I possess was acquired in the ONLY school where it could by possibility be obtained, namely,—in THE STABLES, in which such horses are kept.

When between thirteen and fourteen years of age,

I was disposed to ramble, and not choosing to follow the advice of my parents, or to subject myself any longer to their control, I ran away from home, and was shortly after taken into the employment of Mr. Crooke, who kept race-horses. Mr. Crooke had a farm at Redland, in Gloucestershire, at which place his horses usually wintered. There was also at this season of the year, a large breeding establishment for racing produce. The stallions which at that time composed part of the stud were *King Fergus*, *Aurelius*, and a third young stallion by Highflyer. There were also a number of brood mares and foals, together with several weanlings and yearlings. The string of race-horses which were at this time in the stables, were *Prizefighter*, *Brush*, *Harvest*, *Needle*, *Victory*, *Euphrosyne*, and *Thalia*, (the two last mares.) Besides these, there were two or three young ones in the string, which were not named.

It was autumn when I went to live in the above-mentioned stables, in the humble but active capacity of stable boy. I had every thing to learn, and as I could not be immediately entrusted with the care of a race-horse, I was taught, or rather ordered, to do those things in which boys are generally employed on first coming into stables of this description,—such as merely rubbing the legs of the horses, assisting in setting the stables fair, and in cleaning up the yards. Sometimes I was sent out with a horse to walking exercise, to work off his physic,—at other times, I had to ride a steady one at the tail of the string,—and now and then,

I had to attend to the head of a quiet horse, while he was undergoing the operation of being scraped and rubbed after his sweat.

There being, as I have already observed, a breeding establishment here, other duties besides those of the race-horse stables were required; and these were discharged between the stable hours—such as carrying hay and corn to the different paddocks, filling the water troughs, cutting carrots for the mares and foals, leading out some yearlings, and breaking and forwarding others for their trials. In this way, by order of the groom, were the boys daily employed; and I, of course, had my share of such parts of this drudgery to which I was equal.

Progressively advancing from one thing to the other, until the approach of spring, I became of rather more importance, being then ordered by the groom (who was master of the boys) to look after a race-horse, and ride him in his exercise—two things which, for a boy to be well acquainted with, so as to put the groom's orders into practice (particularly the riding) are no very easy tasks. From the directions, however, which were given to me by the head lad, and from the observations I had made on the manner in which other boys performed their parts, I in a short time, became acquainted with the whole of my duties as a stable boy; and with the rest of this young tribe, I was soon initiated in all the little, low, mischievous tricks and gambling amusements, to which boys in racing stables were, in my time, so much addicted.

When, however, I left my stable companions, I had the good sense to discontinue all such improper practices.

In the above-mentioned stables, at the period of my life of which I am speaking, and at which particular time impressions on the expanding mind of youth become permanent, was I taught that experience, which nothing but such a situation could have afforded; and from this source, as also from subsequent residence in different stables, under various grooms, I have derived the practical information I possess on the subject. Without such opportunity at this early period of my life, I could never have acquired the information which I am now in a situation to communicate; and as far as my talent for observation went, I may say that I lost very few opportunities, either as boy or head lad, of obtaining all the knowledge which the circumstances afforded.

As I approached the state of manhood, I began to think that I had lived quite long enough under the immediate control of different grooms. Being aware that the daily system of working and feeding racehorses was invariably conducted on the same general principles, differing only in application according as the tempers and constitutions of the horses varied; and finding that I had nothing more to learn, I left the training stables, and shortly afterwards engaged myself as groom to a single gentleman, who kept some well-bred horses as hunters. One or two of these were now and then engaged to run in the spring at such gentle-

men's races as I have already mentioned. When my master's horses were thus engaged, the training of them was entrusted to me: and at times, on the same ground with other horses with which they had to come to post. It was, therefore, natural to suppose, that when out at exercise, I should quietly make my observations on the treatment of horses which were to be opposed to those under my care. Having so recently left the stables, in which the practical details of training horses were at all times most strictly observed by the grooms, whose orders were daily to be put into practice by the different stable boys; and having been employed for several years in executing such orders, I had not forgotten how horses were to be treated when in training; and from the way in which I now saw many hunting and saddle-horse grooms working their horses when at exercise, I was quite satisfied that they were far from being well qualified for the task of getting them into racing condition.

Meeting these men every day at morning and evening exercise, I became known to some of them. They confessed that they were unacquainted with the system of training horses to run, and they invited me to go with them to their stables. I visited two or three of these stables at different stable hours, and from the observations I there made, I will do these grooms the justice to say, that nothing could exceed their diligence and attention to the horses in dressing them, &c., and in other respects; their fault indeed was excess. They appeared equally zealous in endeavouring to make their

horses as comfortable as possible. Judging from what I saw, the masters of these men were not sparing of expence, as there seemed to be an ample supply of the best food and clothing, so that an inexperienced observer would naturally have concluded that no horses could be more properly treated. But, as I have already observed, these grooms, from their ignorance of the practical principles of training, wanted confidence in themselves; and from such deficiency, I have known them bring horses out very unfit to run.

When I had attained the age of thirty, I left the stables, as the gentleman with whom I was living at the time was going abroad; and as I had then no inclination to leave England, I gave up my situation as groom. A horse belonging to the above gentleman having fallen lame at this period, it was thought advisable to send him for recovery to the Veterinary College, to which place I took him. Observing here a large establishment for the treatment and cure of diseased horses, and having heard so much of the value of the Veterinary Art, I asked Mr. Sewell (who had just been questioning me relative to the horse I had brought in) whether I could be admitted into the College as a pupil—to which he replied in the affirmative; observing, at the same time, that men of a similar description to myself were the most fit persons to become Veterinary Surgeons. Such information as was necessary at the moment Mr. S. very kindly gave me. He also named the amount of the entrance fee, which I immediately paid; and I remained in the College as a

pupil for about two years, after which, I passed my examination and received my diploma.

From the expence I had incurred in passing through the College, I found, on looking into my finances, that they were not in the most flourishing state; so that there was no chance of my being able to enter upon my profession, nor did it appear that there was any thing left for me but to return to my former situation as groom. I therefore began to look out for a place of this description; thinking that as I had received my diploma from the Veterinary College, I should be considered a valuable acquisition to a nobleman or gentleman who might have a large establishment of horses. But here, to my great astonishment, I was disappointed; for, after seeing several noblemen and gentlemen on the subject, I found that what I thought would have been an advantage to me, proved quite the reverse. I was considered by those noblemen and gentlemen as being of too great importance to be taken into the stables again. This produced great embarrassment in my mind; and as I have already noticed, not having it in my power to set up in my profession, I began almost to despair of obtaining the means of supporting myself even with that degree of respectability which I had formerly enjoyed when a groom, prior to my entering the College.

As I was one day walking in London, brooding over my ill-fortune, I accidentally met Major-General Sir Hussey Vivian, then Lieutenant-Colonel of the 7th Hussars, who knew me when I was acting in the capacity

of groom to an officer of that regiment. As the General had often spoken civilly to me, I took the liberty of mentioning to him that I had passed the College, and was in want of a situation. He immediately asked me if I had any objection to enter the Army as a Veterinary Surgeon. I told him, that if he thought me equal to the post, I should be very glad to accept of it, and that I should feel obliged to him if he would interest himself in my favour. The General promised to mention the subject to the Marquis of Anglesea (then Lord Paget), to whom I was also known. Indeed, prior to my going into the College, his Lordship had been pleased to notice me on several occasions; in short, he had been extremely kind to me, and when I was mentioned by General Vivian as a proper person to become a Veterinary Surgeon in his Lordship's regiment, he was pleased to approve of the proposal, and I was immediately recommended to his Royal Highness the Commander in Chief. I shortly after received my appointment, and an order from Mr. Coleman, principal Veterinary Surgeon, to join the 7th Hussars.

Having now got into a far more respectable situation—that of Veterinary Surgeon in His Majesty's Service—my mind became immediately occupied with my new profession; and for my own interest and reputation, I persevered in endeavouring to obtain that practical knowledge which I conceived indispensably necessary, in order properly to treat the diseased horses of the regiment which were entrusted to my care. My

mind being thus engaged for some years, I had given up all thoughts respecting the management and condition of race-horses, until the year 1815; at which time, the regiment, in which I have still the honour to serve, was on foreign service, forming part of the British Army of Occupation on the Continent. Horse-racing being one of the great sporting amusements of Englishmen, it soon became the order of the day among many of the British Officers of the Army of Occupation, both at Valenciennes and at St. Omer, during the stay of our Army in France. The subscriptions of the officers were liberal, and the plates and stakes which were made by them were thought worth winning; so much so, that race-horses were sent for from England: and during the last year of the Army's being stationed on the continent, I think I shall not exaggerate if I say, that altogether there were not less than from thirty to forty race-horses (cock-tails and hacks), in training at one time, on a heath called the Bruyere, near the town of St. Omer. On this heath was made a pretty good two-mile race-course, with a stand, a rubbing-house, and other conveniences.

As it was known to the officers of the regiment to which I belonged, that in the early part of my life I had been brought up in the stables, it also soon became known to several of the officers of other regiments; and those of them who had horses engaged to run, often applied to me for information how they were to get their horses into a fit state for the race; nor do I hesitate to acknowledge, that from my having so long

left the stables, I was asked questions, some of which I was at the moment at a loss to answer. Observing this to be the case, I was immediately led to think, that the training of horses properly was a much more important art than I had at first imagined; and although I had been so perfectly well acquainted with the entire management of feeding and working horses, I was surprised to find (what I thought was impossible) that the practical part of the subject appeared to be almost obliterated from my memory; but a circumstance, which I shall here relate, put me in a train of soon bringing the matter to my recollection.

One day, as I was riding from the race-course to St. Omer, I was met by General Vivian, who spoke to me on the subject of getting out a horse from England to run at St. Omer races, observing, at the same time, that he was unacquainted with the business of training, nor did he think his groom competent to undertake the management of a horse intended for this purpose; adding, that if he got a horse out, he might be beat for want of being properly prepared. As I had some years previous to this time trained a horse for the General, he asked me, in case he should succeed in getting one out to run, whether, as I was quartered so near the course, I would superintend his training? Aware that the hours of attending to a horse in training would not interfere with my regimental duties, and that there were several other officers doing pretty much the same thing, I told the General, that if my commanding officer had no objection, I

should be most happy to attend to his wishes in this respect. Indeed, I was delighted in having an opportunity of convincing the General, that I was not ungrateful for the kindness I had long ago experienced at his hands. I assured him I would do all in my power to bring his horse to post in the best possible condition; and, if I was successful, it would be very gratifying to my feelings. General Vivian immediately sent to England for a horse, and a brown gelding (a cock-tail), named *Lustre*, was sent out to him; and shortly after that, another, a chesnut mare, was also sent out, named *Momentilla*, and both of them were placed under my care to be trained.

Having these two horses to get ready to run, and one or two other stables now and then to superintend, I began to regret the loss of that practical knowledge I formerly possessed, and which my change of situation had for so many years deprived me of the opportunity of cultivating. This was a circumstance which brought me to think very seriously, not only of what I had undertaken, but, also, how it was to be effected. Calling to mind, however, the regularity of the stables, and the treatment adopted in the working of different horses standing at such stables as I had been accustomed to live in, I speedily regained confidence, and soon began to understand tolerably well what I was about; and by carefully attending to the different constitutions and tempers of the horses under my care, I cautiously put in practice that treatment by which I

thought I should be most likely to bring them into a fit state to run.

It was at the time of my getting horses ready to run on the same ground with others with which they were engaged, that I again observed great irregularities practised by grooms belonging to different officers, who were entrusted with the training of their masters' horses.

The treatment generally adopted by these men (an instance or two excepted), in the working of their horses, amounted, although, I believe, not intentionally, to little less than downright abuse. The hours of their arrival and departure to and from the exercise ground, were, by many of them, often badly timed; and the unreasonable length and pace at which some of them went with their horses in their gallops and sweats, appeared to me, from the daily observations I made, to be but ill-adapted, either to the constitutions or tempers of the horses under their care, or, indeed, of any others. Some of their horses were to be seen running away, and thereby laming themselves; others throwing their riders, and going home to their stables. Indeed, all such accidents may be expected to take place in the preparing of horses to run, when they are entrusted to the care of persons who are totally unacquainted with the regular method of training them. So ignorant, indeed, of this subject are some grooms, that at the commencement of the business, they never once think of the conveniences necessary for the purpose—such as proper stables on or near to such ground

as may be fit to work horses on. During my stay in France, I recollect being informed of an instance of two horses being what was called *trained* in an orchard of three acres in extent; and the men who were riding them at their exercise, were at least twelve stone each. These horses were exercised in this orchard for several weeks, although there was tolerably good ground at a distance of about a mile and a half from the stable; nor were these horses brought to the course until about three weeks before they had to come to post.

I will here mention one more instance of improper management in the training of a horse to run. One evening, after the conclusion of a day's running, I was asked by a gentleman to go with him to his stable to look at a horse of his, which was to run the next day. The same horse had been under my care to be trained some months previous to this time; I was therefore aware that there was some nicety required in *setting* him. As we were riding towards the stable, I was led to talk to the owner on the subject; and he, to my great astonishment, informed me that the horse was then on the muzzle, and that he did not intend to have any food or water given to him until his race was over on the following day. I said but little, but confess I was much surprised, as the owner of the horse was considered, and, in my opinion, justly considered, by those who knew him, to be a clever man. He had been in the habit of keeping horses the greater part of his life. The horse in question having two miles to walk to the course, I recommended that, to a

certain extent, he should be indulged both in food and water at proper intervals, up to the period of his coming out of the stable to run.

Now, those of my readers who may be experienced in the training of horses, will at once see the folly of such absurd, or I may say, such cruel treatment as was here intended to be carried into effect. No matter what description of horse it may be, as to constitution or temper,—as to the length he may be going to run,—the distance he may have to walk to the course, or the time of day he is to start;—there is no one circumstance with which I am acquainted, that would make it requisite to keep a horse for eighteen or twenty-four hours, without food or water; and more particularly, one that could bear but little *setting*, which was the case in the present instance.

Where horses are pretty equally matched, there can be but very little chance for those which have been badly trained, to win against others which have been moderately well-trained; for, even in the inferior sort of training which takes place among hunting and saddle-horse grooms, some men's ideas are superior to others on this, as on other subjects; and in a race, the best horse may be easily beat for want of being equally well prepared to run, according to his constitution, with those opposed to him.

It was from such examples of abuse as I have

described, and others of a similar nature, and also from my often being asked by gentlemen, if there was no book published on the Treatment and Condition of Race-horses, that I was first induced to turn my thoughts on writing a Treatise of this kind. With this view, I have minutely studied every particular circumstance, relative to the subject, or that is connected with it; but to what extent I may have succeeded, in bringing this first part of the Art of Training Race-horses into a correct and regular system, I must leave to that portion of the public, who are competent to judge of the practical instructions here attempted.

In this *first* part of my work, I have stated many minute circumstances, which, although apparently of little value, will, in their general application, be found to be of the highest consequence; and the rules which I have laid down, will, I trust, appear so just and simple in their principles, and the explanations which accompany them, so clear, that grooms who are able to read, may, by a frequent reference to them, and by a particular attention to the minute circumstances to which I have alluded in this first part, and to which I shall also refer in the second, gain a perfect acquaintance with the whole economy of training stables, and with the most correct and proper method of training such horses as may be entrusted to their care. By gaining such knowledge, I hesitate not to say, that they will

not only become good and efficient grooms, but what should be the leading object of their ambition, they will, by their increased skill and acquirements, provide the highest gratification to themselves, and yield the greatest advantage to their employers.

ideas on the subject, which were imbibed in youth, and matured at a more advanced age, by long and serious reflection. Should I have succeeded in attaining the object of my wishes and ambition, it is only from you, who will fairly judge of my exertions, that I can hope for approbation. Others, I will admit, might have treated the subject with more ability; but I am confident that none can have the science of Horse Racing more truly at heart than he who has the honor to subscribe himself,

My Lords and Gentlemen,

Your most obliged

And very humble Servant,

R. DARVILL.

Jan. 1838.

CONTENTS.

Introduction 1

CHAPTER I.

On the Stables, &c. 21

CHAPTER II.

On Gentlemen's private Training Stables . . . 70

CHAPTER III.

On Ventilation 77

CHAPTER IV.

On the Distemper 82

CHAPTER V.

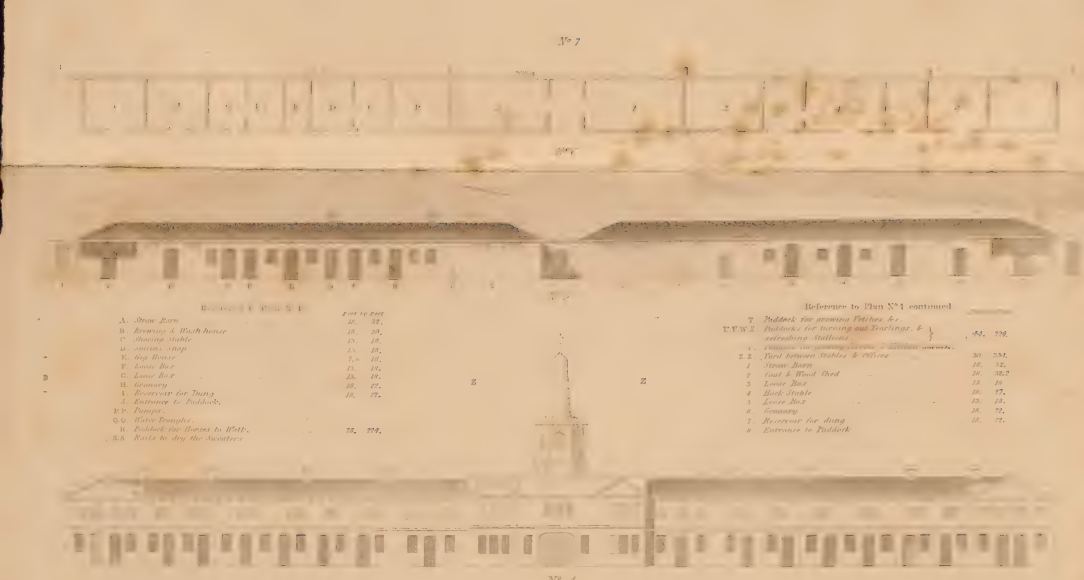
On Food 90

CHAPTER VI.

On Water 101

CHAPTER VII.

On Physic 107



Nº 7

Reference to Plan Nº 4.

		Feet by Feet.	
A.	Straw Barn	45.	35.
B.	Brewing & Wash house	16.	20.
C.	Shoeing Stable	15.	16.
D.	Carriage Shop	15.	18.
E.	Log House	7.6	15.
F.	Loose Box	15.	14.
G.	Loose Box	15.	14.
H.	Granary	18.	17.
I.	Reservoir for Dung	18.	12.
J.	Entrance to Paddock.		
K K.	Pumps.		
L L.	Water Troughs.		
M.	Paddock for Horses to Walk.	78.	114.
S S.	Rails to dry the Sweetcorn		

Reference to Plan Nº 4. continued

		Feet by Feet.	
T.	Paddock for mowing Patches &c.		
U V W X.	Paddocks for turning out Yearlings, & extending Stallions	50.	270.
Y.	Compost for spreading Grass & Arable Lands.		
Z Z.	Yard between Stables & Offices	30.	230.
1	Straw Barn	18.	32.
2	Coal & Wood Shed	10.	18.7
3	Loose Box	13.	14
4	Back Stable	18.	17.
5	Loose Box	13.	13.
6	Granary	18.	12.
7	Reservoir for dung	18.	12.
8	Entrance to Paddock		

Nº 4.

Nº 5

Nº 2.

Reference to Plan Nº 1.

		Feet by Feet.	
a a.	Front Court within walls	180.	334.
b.	Tan Pits Diameter	140.	
c. c.	Water Troughs.		

Reference to Plan Nº 2.

	Center Building	42.	62.
a.	Archway width		11.
b.	Parlour	9.	13.
c.	Saddle Room	13.	17.
d.	Staircase circular	7.	7.6
e.	Kitchen	13.	16.
f.	Pantry	5.	6.
g.	Scullery	5.6	6.
h.	Larder	5.	10.
i.	Boys Hall	20.	21.6
k.	Saddle Room	13.	17.
l.	Stair to Bedroom & with privies under width	3.9	
	East and West Wings	24.	142.
m. m.	4 Stalled Stables	20.	27.
n. n.	Loose Box	13.	20.
o. o.	2 Stalled Stable	13.	20.
p. p.	Loose Box	13.	20.
q. q.	3 Stalled Stable	20.	20.
r. r.	Loose Box	13.	20.
s. s.	2 Stalled Stable	13.	20.
t. t.	Loose Box	13.	20.
u. u.	2 Stalled Stable	13.	22

Nº 1

Reference to Plan Nº 3.

		Feet by Feet.	
a.	House Staircase width	7.	34.6
b.	Private Saddle Room Laboratory, &c.	13.	21.6
c.	Bed Room	13.	17.
d.	Parlour	21.6	17.6
e.	Bed Room	16.	21.6
f.	Bed Room	13.	17.
g.	Bed Room	13.	17.
	East and West Wings.		
h. h.	Stairs width	3.9	
i. i.	Galleries width	4.6	
k. k.	Closets	4.6	9.
l. l.	Sitting Rooms		
m. m.	Closets water	4.6	7
n. n.	Bed Rooms	13.	13
o. o.	Bed Rooms	13.	13.
p. p.	Bed Rooms	13	13.
q. q.	Sitting Rooms	13.	27.
r. r.	Bed Rooms	13.	20.
s. s.	Bed Rooms	13.	20.
t. t.	Bed Rooms	13.	13.
u. u.	Bed Rooms	13.	13.

General Plan of Ground 358 ft by 300.

A TREATISE,

&c.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE STABLES, ETC.

When horse-racing first commenced in this country I imagine it must have been introduced by noblemen and gentlemen of fortune, who kept their race-horses as they did their hounds, as a part of their sporting establishment, and who occasionally ran them for different public prizes, as much probably for the amusement it afforded, as for the value or honor of the prize they might win. I believe there are some *few* noblemen and gentlemen, who still maintain their racing studs much upon the above mentioned principles; but if we take a view of horse-racing upon the general scale of the present day, we shall find that it

A TREATISE,

&c.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE STABLES, ETC.

When horse-racing first commenced in this country I imagine it must have been introduced by noblemen and gentlemen of fortune, who kept their race-horses as they did their hounds, as a part of their sporting establishment, and who occasionally ran them for different public prizes, as much probably for the amusement it afforded, as for the value or honor of the prize they might win. I believe there are some *few* noblemen and gentlemen, who still maintain their racing studs much upon the above mentioned principles; but if we take a view of horse-racing upon the general scale of the present day, we shall find that it

is now followed by many thousands in the different ranks of life, rather as a business of a deep speculation. Where there are such enormous sums of money depending on the result of any great stakes, or heavy match, we ought to bear in mind that no pains which promise any chance of success should be spared, nor any accommodation that might in any way be advantageous to horses in training, should ever be lost sight of. The first object to which I shall direct the attention of my readers is that of *Training Stables*.

Although I have lived in different stables, I never remember to have seen any that I could consider in every respect as being perfectly complete. It is, however, a matter of importance, as well for the health and comfort of the horses, as for the convenience of the training groom and his boys, that proper stables should be provided for race-horses to stand in, not only during the time of their training, but also during the winter, at which period of the year many of them are out of training. There are tolerably good stables, both public and private, at Newmarket, and at many other places where race-horses are trained. Trainers know how stables should be constructed, for the purpose of carrying on their business with facility; yet there are some of these stables so very badly arranged with regard to convenience, as to render them very inferior to others, the circumstances of those who own them probably not admitting of their making them as perfectly commodious as they ought to be.

Having lived both in good and bad stables, I am

so well convinced of the very great benefit derived from the former, as well in regard to the health of the horses, as to the advantages obtained in favor of the trainer in the carrying on of his business, that I shall here endeavour to describe how a range of stables may be planned, suitable in all respects for race-horses to stand in at all times.

If the stables, house, and offices I am about to propose, cannot be conveniently built on the downs, where the horses are to be trained, they should not be at any great distance from them. A mile, for example, is a distance that would be sometimes attended with inconvenience, from the uncertainty of the weather at some periods. Should the horses be on the downs at such a distance from the stables, and heavy rain come on suddenly, they would not, in all probability, be able to reach the stables (in a walk) before their clothes would be nearly, or, perhaps quite wet through; an occurrence which, for various reasons, should, if possible, be avoided. Another great objection to this distance is, that some race-horses, although excellent runners, are, at times, found to be but very indifferent travellers on the road. Accidents might, therefore, happen; a careless horse might tumble down and break his knees, and this I have known to occur more than once. It would be running too great a risk, with valuable horses in training, to allow them to walk even half a mile twice a day in summer, over a dry hot road, particularly with horses that may have engagements of great importance to their owners. A

piece of ground between the downs and stables, of the length I have been speaking of, unless made on purpose, would, I fear, from constant use, very soon resemble a high road.

It may be thought, by some of my readers, that the horses may be led from the stables to the downs; and I admit that race-horses should almost at all times be led; when travelling on the road; but in this instance and for this distance, there is an objection, and for this reason,—that horses, from having been indulged, as they most of them are in winter, are, in their first coming out in the spring, much too calfish to allow the boys to lead them with any degree of safety. A trainer must be a bad judge, indeed, to suffer his boys to make the attempt. But, although I have objected to horses in training going from the stables to the downs on a hard road, yet I am fully aware that this cannot, at times, be avoided with the best of horses, and it is a thing that frequently occurs to country plate horses and others, which are being led through different parts of the kingdom, in travelling from race to race, and are often obliged to stand at inns, a mile, or perhaps, two or three miles distant from the course on which they are going to run.

Recurring now to the subject of building training stables, I wish to be understood that those I intend to propose, are what is generally called the home stables of a large public racing establishment. These I shall consider as being placed under the direction of a regular training groom, who is in business for himself, and

who takes in race-horses to train for noblemen and gentlemen; say, for example, at Newmarket, or any other part of the kingdom, where the business of training horses is carried on to a great extent.

Training stables should be built on a dry, level surface, either on or close to the training ground. It is to be observed, also, that they should be at a suitable distance from where the horses pull up after sweating, trying or running. Being thus situated, they not only answer every convenient purpose, but as all trainers know, horses, like other animals, when making towards home, come more freely in their sweats, and will give their trials and races more kindly in running to their stables than from them. Were I to build training stables at Newmarket, I would place them somewhere about the centre of the fields at the back of the White Lion public-house, and in a parallel line with His Majesty's rubbing house, with the front of them to a full southern aspect. I strongly recommend the front of all stables being placed to the above aspect; for from the observations which I have made in attending sick horses, I am of opinion that horses, when constantly standing in stables, in which the doors and windows are placed so as to front to the south, are not so liable to constitutional diseases (the distemper, for example), as those which stand in stables, the front of which may have a northern, or perhaps a north-eastern aspect. Indeed, there is something so cheerful and animating in the enlivening rays of the sun (which horses enjoy in company with other animals) that I

cannot too strongly advise the front of stables, generally, to be placed as above mentioned.

I do not pretend to any knowledge of architecture as a science; nor am I but little acquainted with its technical terms: I have, nevertheless, ventured to sketch a plan and elevation of what appears to me, a proper building for a large training establishment for race-horses. Bred up, as I have already said, from an early period of life, in the stables, and having for many years since that period, enjoyed opportunities of observing and comparing the advantages and defects of several of these establishments, I may venture to consider myself acquainted with their minute details; while I trust that the advantages that I have since derived from my practice as a veterinary surgeon, and the opportunities afforded me, of studying the treatment of horses, in disease as well as in health, in the various situations and trying circumstances of a military life, will enable me to appreciate better than I could otherwise have done, the value of my early experience; and to form more correct and decided opinions, as to the propriety and impropriety of many of the practices in the management of race-horses, which custom or experience may have introduced. I must bespeak the patience of my readers, in following me into details on this part of my subject, which may to some appear unnecessarily minute, and to others unimportant or trifling; but those who are aware how delicate and high-bred a creature we have to deal with, in the training of a race-horse, and how much

the circumstances of air and temperature, and methods of feeding, clothing, watering, and exercising this noble animal, may affect his powers for the race, will be ready to excuse my minuteness, or rather, I hope to applaud me for it.

Nor in the establishment I propose, have I consulted only the treatment of the horse; on the contrary, I have endeavoured to provide and arrange the apartments and accommodations, which to me appear the most suitable and convenient, for the training groom, head lads, and exercise boys, which such establishments necessarily require; and such, I hope, as will best enable them to execute their duties with ease and credit to themselves, and satisfaction to their employers.

No establishment can be said to be complete, in which any person or thing, necessary to execute any work in the best manner, is wanting; nor even if these be all present, can it be said to be well conducted, unless every person about it is suitably accommodated, and everything so well adapted to its proper use, and set in its proper place, that it may always be ready at the shortest notice, to do its office in the most perfect manner. I shall not, therefore, neglect to enumerate the instruments and utensils, which early experience and subsequent reflection have taught me are necessary to be provided, in the several departments of duty; nor to assign the places where they should be kept, in order to be readiest at hand. Those who, like myself, have actually performed those duties, will know how

much their labours will be facilitated, and their comforts promoted, by due attention to these regulations; while those who are uninstructed may learn what things ought to be provided, and how they can be most commodiously arranged, so as to carry on the establishment with the best prospect of success. I beg, however, to intimate to those whose situations will not permit them to follow all the particular and minute instructions which I shall lay down, that where the end proposed can be equally well attained by slight changes or deviations from the instructions I shall give, such changes or deviations may be adopted, to suit the circumstances, habits, or opinions of the party.

I am aware, too, that modifications of my plans and arrangements may be required in large establishments, maintained by private individuals, or in small public establishments in various parts of the country; or in those situations where a hunting establishment may, to a certain extent, be combined with that for the race.

To follow such modifications, however, would be at once very tedious, and but of little use, since the ordinary judgment and experience of individuals can best suggest what may best suit their peculiar plans, circumstances or situations. My aim is to sketch, both in outline and details, the plans and practices of a public racing establishment, according to the principles on which I think they should rest, rejecting nothing which appears to me necessary to conduct it in the completest manner, without, however, presuming to

say that nothing superfluous has been introduced, or that something more may not be hereafter added, by future experience. I shall also, by and bye, make some few remarks on the private stables of noblemen and gentlemen.

I now proceed to describe the stables, as represented in plate No. I. In that plate is delineated a front view, or elevation of a range of stables, offices, paddocks, &c.

REFERENCES TO PLAN.—*No.* 1. is the approach to the front yard by a door in the centre of the wall, outside of which there are two troughs, one on each side the door. These troughs being thus placed, will have the benefit of the sun on them, during the day. These are for the horses to water at, which go to their daily exercise on the downs, so that they may not have to pass through the front door oftener than is necessary, in going in and out of the stables. These troughs should be kept locked, and it may be necessary, when the horses are in training, to keep live fish in the troughs

The frame of the door here, is to be five feet in width, by nine in height; and for the space of about two feet in the centre, it would be better if the sides of it were rounded. Rollers let in would be still preferable, that in case any of the horses passing through should, by accident, come in contact with the door-frame, they would not be so liable to receive so great an injury as they otherwise might, were there no rollers, or were the edges of the door-frame not

rounded. From this door, as it is the entrance into the front yard, there must, of course, be a bell.

The yard within the walls, is one hundred and eighty feet, by three hundred and fifty-four. In the centre, is a turf ring, one hundred and forty feet in diameter; round which should be formed a sort of coach-road, made of fine gravel and sand, or any other materials of this kind that may be thought to answer the purpose better. All I want here, is a smooth, level surface for the horses to walk on, soft enough to allow them some little foot-hold, as there will occasionally be horses ordered to walk in this yard at certain times and for certain periods in the course of the day, and not to go out on the downs, that they may be watered while at exercise. I have here fixed two troughs, one in the centre of the wall in the east, and the other in the centre of the wall in the west, in which situations each trough of water will, when opened morning and evening, have the benefit of the sun; and the groom will, of course, order the boys to water the horses in the morning at the trough in the west, and in evening at the trough in the east.

The wooden frame on which the troughs are to stand, should be eighteen inches from the ground; the length of each trough should be twelve feet, and the breadth over the top should be eighteen inches; fifteen in the width at the bottom, and fifteen in depth. At one corner in the bottom there should be a hole with a plug in it, so that the water may be let off occasionally to cleanse them. There must be lids to these

troughs, with hasps and staples, as it will be necessary, at times, to lock them up. Under them, in the summer time, may stand the buckets; in winter, while the horses are out of training, these may be kept in the stables, or in any other more convenient place.

No. 2. Ground plan of the stables.

No. 3. Plan of the second floor, and dwelling apartments.

No. 4. A front view of a range of stables, made to front the south. It consists of a centre building for the grooms; house, forty-two feet by sixty-two, and two extending wings, each twenty-four feet by one hundred and forty-eight, divided into separate stables, stalls, and boxes. This building is entered through an archway in the centre (eleven feet wide) beneath which are the door-ways leading right and left to the stables in either wing, and also into the apartments of the grooms' house, boys' hall, &c. &c. Over the stables, is the second story, divided into chambers and sitting rooms (with closets to each), for the different training grooms and head lads that may occasionally come to reside at the establishment. The other small chambers are for those boys who look after horses that may be standing in the boxes. The galleries leading to these several rooms are in width, four feet six, and are entered by doors on the top of the stairs erected in the back yard. Through the front yard, we pass into the back yard. (*See plan, No.* 5.) The range of building forming this yard is one story high; it is of the same extent as the building in front of it. (*See plan, No.* 6.)

but to be only twenty feet in breath. In this range are situated the straw and hay barns, granary, domestic offices, and other accommodations required in such an establishment. At each end of this yard are large folding gates, with wickets in them, and are for the entrance of waggons, carts, and foot people. There should be a bell at each gate, as they are at all times to be kept locked.

Through the centre of this building is a large passage, leading to seven inclosures or paddocks. (*See plan, No.* 7.) The centre paddock is seventy-eight feet, by two hundred and forty-four feet, with rails ranged round by the wall, for the drying of the horses' sweaters. Adjoining the entrance, inside the walls, are two water troughs. This paddock is intended for the horses to walk in occasionally, as ordered by the groom. The two paddocks on either side of the centre one, are forty-four feet in width. The two outer ones are fifty feet in width, but they are all of equal length, separated by walls nine feet high. The ground on which the stables, offices, &c. stand, is enclosed on every side by a stone wall of the same height. The four paddocks of forty-four feet in width have troughs in them. These paddocks are intended to turn into occasionally, those yearlings which may not have to come to post till they are two years old, to get a little spring grass, after they have been broken; or for the same purpose for a country-plate horse, that may require his constitution, as well as his legs, to be refreshed; or for turning out a sick horse, such as may

be labouring under constitutional disease, as inflamed lungs, or the distemper; or when these paddocks are not used for any of the above purposes, they may be useful to turn the hacks into, to take the staleness out of them. But as colts, as well as horses, are apt on being turned out to range wildly about, it may be advisable to bank these four paddocks round, to prevent them from coming in contact with the walls, and thereby injuring themselves.

These banks placed round where the wall and ground form a junction, on a basis of from three to four feet, raised against the walls in a gradual, but oblique direction, and of the same height as the basis, may have the desired effect—that of preventing the horses coming in contact with the walls. I strongly recommend this plan of banking, as I remember a very fine colt having his shoulder fractured, from coming suddenly in contact with the wall of the paddock in which he was ranging. In one of the outer paddocks, of fifty-five feet each in width, should be grown tares, vetches, lucerne, or clover-grass. The seeds of these plants should be sown on different portions of the ground, of sufficient dimensions to supply two or three horses at a time, for ten days or a fortnight, with a succession of crops, and at intervals during the summer. I allude to such horses as are stationary during the summer, as many of those at Newmarket are; and if it could be done, these green meats, as they are termed, should be grown till autumn, at which time the country plate horses generally arrive at the home stables, and to them, this sort of food

would be very refreshing. Of the other outer paddock, a sufficient portion should be sown with carrots, for the supply of such horses as may not be in strong work during winter. The other parts of this paddock may be converted into a kitchen garden, to supply the inhabitants residing on the premises.

The principal entrances to the outer paddocks are by doors in the wall of the back yard; and the four paddocks, of forty-four feet in width, are entered from the back doors of the loose boxes, the paddocks all communicating with each other by doors in the side walls. I have planned this for convenience, yet there is rather an objection to this plan; for colts and horses winding each other at the doors, are apt to paw and knock at them, and soon get them out of repair; and unless they are properly secured, they are much inclined to play with the common sort of fastening, till they get the door open.

As these paddocks are not arranged or intended for breeding stock, but merely for the purpose just mentioned, it may, perhaps, be doubtful whether these communications are an advantage or not; if it is thought that the doors should remain as I have put them, they might be fenced round, in order to meet the objection I have urged.

Having, in the preceding section, given a general outline of the plan of building, &c., I now propose to follow it more in detail, as far, at least, as regards the forms, dimensions, and use of the various apartments for the groom, head lads, and boys (who consider

the establishment as their home); as also the different stables, and the conveniences they should be supplied with, leaving matters of mere taste and embellishment to the fancy of others, consulting only what regards propriety and use.

The centre building consists of two stories, and is entered through an arch, beneath which are four doors, immediately opposite each other. The two first open into two large saddle rooms, communicating with the stables. I shall first speak of the dwelling apartments, which are to be entered by the two farthest doors. The one on the right may be the entrance with a passage, or small hall, to the groom's own private dwelling; on the left of this passage are the kitchen, larder, and scullery; on the right is a small parlour. It will be evident from this disposition, that there is to be an under-ground cellar. The door on the opposite side of the arch, is the entrance to a large kitchen, or servants' hall, for the boys to take their meals in, and also to occupy at intervals during the day. This room should have a fire-place of suitable dimensions, in which a large fire may be made, not only for the comfort of the boys, but for the purpose of drying the sweaters, when the weather does not permit of this being done in the open air. To dry them conveniently before the fire, long wooden horses, three and a half, or four feet high, should be provided. This room should be furnished with all the conveniences the purposes for which it is to serve may render necessary.

Having thus finished what relates to the apartments

on the first floor, or ground plan of our centre building, I shall now proceed to describe the upper or second floor, which forms six chambers with a passage leading to them, from which they may all be entered. The room to the front and over the centre of the arch, I have supposed to be the private saddle room, or if you will, the study of the resident training groom. One part of this room should be fitted up as a laboratory for keeping such medicines, instruments, and other articles as will hereafter be noticed, together with the apparatus necessary for compounding the medicines; a writing desk with a cupboard over it for books, such as the stud-book, racing-calendar, and books of reference, those on medicine and the veterinary art. The trial book should also be kept there. Another cupboard or press should be fitted up with racks, for putting away the trial saddles, trusses, small weights, horses' plates, &c. The trial jackets and caps, which should be all of one colour, may be kept here; and it is also to be observed, that these saddles and trusses should never be handled, if it can possibly be avoided, by any one but the training groom or head lad. A third cupboard, fitted up with shelves for the best of the spare cloths, should also be provided. Racks and pegs for the racing saddles, bridles, running reins, girths, martingals, and surcingles, should be fixed up in some convenient part of this room. There should also be a dial, a weighing machine, and a weather glass. This room will require a good sized fire-place. The best description of locks should be put on the

cupboards, and there should also be a good one on the room door, nor should the keys ever be out of the possession of the training groom. The other rooms on this story, with a fire-place in each, may be allotted for sitting and bed-rooms for the training groom, to suit the convenience of the establishment. If it be thought necessary, two or three rooms for the servants of the training groom, may form an attic story in this part of the building.

The several apartments which compose the central building being thus allotted to their different uses, I shall describe how the interior of the two saddle rooms, for common use, are to be fitted up. It has already been noticed, that these rooms are entered by the two first doors, right and left, opposite to each other under the arch ; and from each of these, a door should open into each range of training stables. These rooms are designed for the exercise saddles and bridles, belonging to horses in the boxes. They should also be furnished with presses or cupboards, having shelves to receive such spare cloths as may be in frequent though not in constant use. The sweaters, for example, after being well dried and folded up with the scrapers in them, may be kept here ; indeed all the articles that are frequently used about the horses, and many of those in the stable, may, when not in use, be kept in these rooms. A large corn bin should also be fixed in each of these rooms, for the resident training groom to feed such horses as may be under his care. Each room should also contain a boiler, sufficiently large to hold half a

dozen buckets of water, and furnished with a cock at the bottom. Warm water may thus be kept ready to take the chill off the cold water occasionally given to the horses when in the stable, or to render the cold water sufficiently hot for a fomentation for the legs of such horses as may have been sweating, trying, or running long lengths at a severe pace. The boilers should be put up so that the steam they give off may escape by the flue of the fire-place, or by an aperture in the wall, to prevent, as much as possible, the room from becoming damp.

I shall now describe the range of stables, which occupies the ground floor of each wing, and which is continued from the centre building. The height of the stables within, should at least be twelve feet in the clear. I shall leave to the better judgment of the architect, to decide on the height of the exterior walls, as also of those in the interior, used as partitions. In erecting these walls, spaces are of course to be left, as I shall hereafter direct, for purposes which will be then explained. It is also to be observed that the exterior walls are to be built of a sufficient substance to prevent, as effectually as possible, the heat in summer or the cold in winter, from affecting the temperature of the stables. The openings first to be noticed in the front walls, are, of course, for the doors and windows, as exhibited in the plan. There must also be small openings for the admission of air, in that part of the wall (in each stable) which approximates to the ceiling. Now, as it is the custom, and indeed a very proper one,

for the boys to mount the horses in the stable, and ride them out to exercise, and in again on returning, it will be advisable, in order to prevent accidents occuring either to the boys or to the horses, to make these door-ways, as well as all the others on the premises, very large.

The space to be left for these door frames (the edges of which should be rounded off at the centre about two feet) should be in width, four feet, eight inches, by nine feet eight, and to be somewhat arched at the top. The door frames should be seven feet eight inches high, so as to leave a space above the door for a moveable window, about a foot and a half deep, which may be hung so as to turn on a central pivot, and occasionally permit the ingress of air. If also, the said door frames be made four inches thick, and rounded off as above mentioned (as all stable doors should be) they will leave a full four feet in the clear. The number of windows to be in each stable, are two; the spaces left for them are to commence six feet from the ground, and should be four feet four for the sash frames, in the four and three-stall stables; but those in the loose boxes and two-stables are to be made proportionably less. The lower half of the whole of the windows should be formed by two ranges of flat wooden rails, let into the wall a little on each side, and made to slide over each other, so as to admit air when required, in the manner of drying houses of paper manufactories; and the upper part should be glazed to admit the light. These glazed parts in the loose boxes must be protected

by strong wire, to prevent the horses from breaking them. There are to be shutters outside these windows; and if they were made to resemble the Venetian blinds, which are so generally fixed outside the windows of houses on the Continent, and not unfrequently in England, they would most effectually exclude the sun's heat, and at the same time permit the admission of air. I see no objection to cavities or recesses being left in convenient parts of the front walls, and of suitable dimensions for the formation of cupboards for the forks, brooms, and shovels; and other small recesses may also be formed into cupboards about a foot square, for each boy to put away his comb and brush, his damp wisp, picker, sponge and main-comb; but the fastenings of the cupboards in the boxes should be made in such a manner as to prevent the horse from opening them.

The partition walls which divide the stables into separate compartments, are to be placed at different distances from each other, in the following order:— No. 1, twenty-seven feet; No. 2, thirteen feet; No. 3, thirteen feet; No. 4, thirteen feet; No. 5, twenty feet; No. 6, thirteen feet; No. 7, thirteen feet; No. 8, thirteen feet; and No. 9, thirteen feet. In each of these walls, there must be a space left for a door-way at a suitable distance from the horses' quarters, to admit occasionally of a communication from one stable to another, so that the resident and principal training groom may, whenever he has the entire management of all the horses in his stables, proceed from one to the other to superintend his boys, and see that they dress

their horses properly, and without abusing them by kicking or striking them.

This building being intended as a public establishment for the standing of race-horses, as well as to afford proper accommodation for them, there must be rooms for the grooms, head lads, and boys who are sometimes sent with horses; and the sitting rooms, and chambers placed over the stables, in both wings and extending through the entire range, are intended for this purpose; so that the partition walls dividing the stables, being continued up to the roof, will principally form the rooms on the second floor. These large rooms over each of the four, and three-stall stables, are to be partitioned off, in which partition there is to be a doorway; this will give in each wing two sitting and two bed rooms, communicating with each other. In such an establishment as I have here traced, there ought to be living, to assist the resident training groom, a steady man and one head lad, or otherwise two head lads; and it is for them, and the grooms and head lads who may occasionally be sent with the horses, that the communicating sitting and bed rooms are intended; the others are for the boys whose horses are in loose boxes, or in two-stall stables. In each of the bed rooms of the resident head lads, there should be an alarum clock. This arrangement of the second floor in each wing, will give nine bed rooms, and two sitting rooms; the whole of them are to have fire places, and to be conveniently fitted up with pegs, cupboards, presses, &c. At the back part of the building, or

along its northern front, a sufficient space is left for a passage, from which the entrance to the several chambers may be made. This passage is lighted by windows in the back, and is entered by an outside staircase to each wing. The remaining portion of this floor in the centre building may be converted into two bed rooms, for the use of the private servants of the resident groom, and over these rooms the clock is to be fixed, as may be seen in the plan. Having described the exterior walls of the stables, as well as those in the interior for partitions, I now proceed to explain the plan of the interior of the stables. In each wing are nine separate spaces of ground partitioned off, and of different dimensions; but as the two wings exactly correspond with each other, the description of the interior of the stables in one wing will suffice for both.

Proceeding from the centre, the first plot of ground is for a four-stall stable, allowing for each stall a space of six feet in the clear of the wood work. Such should be the breadth of every stall on the premises, but by no means wider; if it be, the horse will often be standing across it. In my opinion, a racing stable should never consist of more than four stalls; as it seldom occurs that in one establishment, there are more than four horses which require to be worked and treated so exactly alike, as at all times to be placed in the same class. As a guide to my observations on the arrangement of the interior of the stables, let us suppose the horses to be standing in the stables. I would

advise that each stall-post behind the horse's quarters should be placed at a distance from the north wall of the building (or that which fronts the heads of the horses) of ten feet, which will form the length of the stall. Its height, commencing from the post, should be five feet and a half. The workman, in erecting the stall, must observe, that as he approaches the centre of it, he should begin gradually to raise it in a curve direction, until he has reached within about a foot of the wall, and from that part to its insertion into the wall it should be straight. The top rail being fixed, the stall, when completed, should measure in the highest part, at least eight feet and a half, which is sufficiently high to prevent the horses from smelling to each other. The whole of the wood work should be of oak; if all the wood work cannot be of oak, the racks, the manger-rails, cribbing-boards, and the first six planks in each stall from the post should certainly be of this sort of wood. There is to be fixed in the centre of each of these stalls, in front of the horse's head, and two inches above the manger, a cribbing-board, two feet six inches square; and six inches from the upper edge of it, should be attached a ring, to which should be affixed a chain with a swivel and some round links in the centre; and at the bottom part of it there should be a piece of iron, something in the form of the letter T. This chain being thus made, will allow of being let out or shortened to a convenient length, for the purpose of chaining up the horse's head in a proper position, at the time of being dressed. The

length of the chain should be three feet, which, when let out to its full extent, will be of sufficient length to admit of the horse's reaching the bottom and every part of the manger with ease; but it must not be made to exceed the above length, or the horse will have the power of reaching his bedding at the time of his being fed; a thing, which, for various reasons, should be avoided. The manger, with regard to its depth and breadth, may be made as most others are. To prevent the horses from injuring themselves by getting their legs into them (which they will sometimes do when the mangers are very low), the top rail of the manger ought to be three feet ten inches from the ground. I think the fixed mangers according to the old plan are to be preferred; they are more convenient than those which are made to draw in and out of the wall; but on this point I do not speak from experience, as I never remember to have lived in any stables where those of the latter description were used. Some are of opinion that horses cannot conveniently crib-bite, when there is no manger-rail; but horses that are much inclined to this habit, will be at no loss to put it in practice while they have the bottom rail of the rack to lay hold of. It may, therefore, be advisable to put a horse that may be much inclined to crib-bite, into a stable or box where there is no rack; a drawer manger may then be an advantage. Wainscotting should be continued from the bottom and outer edge of the manger, down to where the wall and ground meet.

In regard to the rack, if one be placed, it must be

fixed in the left hand corner of the stall, resting on the top rail of the manger; for from the position in which the horse stands in the stall, it will be more out of the way here than if it were placed either in the right hand corner or in the centre; for the boy who looks after a race-horse, from custom and for convenience, invariably goes up to him on the near side, no matter what he has to do with him; and as invariably, when leaving him, comes away on the near side also; so that the horse, although standing straight in himself from habit (except now and then, when eating his corn) almost at all times stands somewhat across the stall, with his head towards the rack, and his quarters inclined to the off-side, more than to the centre of the stall.

The racks, as it has already been observed, are to be made of well-seasoned oak, and should measure eighteen inches from the bottom to the top, or at farthest not exceeding twenty. The space from the corner of the stall and the wall to which the rack is fixed, to the front of the rack, should also measure eighteen inches, the top and bottom part of the rack being brought out and arched for this purpose.

This one rack will be sufficiently large to hold the quantity of hay a race-horse may require at any one time during the day, or to serve him the whole of the night; for few racers, when in training, eat more than six or seven pounds of hay during the twenty-four hours. It may be thought by some of my readers that I have placed the racks too low; indeed I have

no doubt they would look much better if placed a foot higher. I know that appearances are much studied in hunting and saddle-horse stables; but in stables for race-horses, the first objects to be considered are comfort and utility, and the rack placed at the height I have above directed is convenient for the boy putting in the hay, and equally convenient for the use of the horse in pulling it out to feed himself, and which he can do in an easy natural position. The plan of tying up the horse in the stable is a circumstance to which, in order to prevent accidents, some attention should be paid. For this purpose, one collar-rein is quite sufficient. I do not approve of the practice of attaching two reins, one to each side of the collar; for when a horse is rubbing his head with his hind foot (as he sometimes will do), should he unfortunately get his leg over either of the reins, it might be attended with serious consequences, more particularly if such occurrence should happen to the horse near the time he was going to run. He may, in struggling, cut his pastern joint with the rein, to such an extent as to prevent his coming to post. Whatever method is adopted for the purpose of securing the horse in his stall, the more simple it is, the better. I should advise its being done by having a hole made in or below the manger rail, for the rein of the collar to pass through; this might run on a pulley into a sort of case or trunk fixed inside the waintscotting, and if it be necessary to give length to the collar-rein, this case or trunk may be sunk below the surface of the

stable floor. It should be large enough to allow the log or weight to move up or down with facility; this weight should, however, be sufficiently heavy, so as at all times to prevent the collar-rein from hanging loose. No inconvenience will arise from attending to these directions, if the rein be long enough to allow the horse to lie down at full length, with ease and comfort to himself. A trap-door may be made in the waintscotting on one side of the case, to afford the facility of removing any obstruction that may occur. There may also be a trap-door under the rack, for the purpose of removing the short hay and seeds that fall through the bottom of it. In most race-horse stables there is a thin wood work attached to the ceiling, and forming an arch over each horse's stall, the outsides of which arches are made to meet. It must be observed, that the bottom part of these arches should correspond in breadth with the top part of the stable post, the posts forming the bases upon which the arches rest.

Although I have lived in stables where the wood-work I have here described has been placed over the stalls, I confess I do not know, nor do I remember ever to have heard of its being of any particular advantage, unless it be that, in effect, it gives the stalls a neat and finished appearance. If the centre of the arches were dropped sufficiently low, they might in this way form a sort of curtain, and prevent the sun for a short period during the day, from shining too powerfully upon the horses' heads; but this can be

better regulated by window shutters. Rings should be fixed in the stall posts for the purpose of buckling on pillar-reins: but generally speaking, pillar-reins are not used in race-horse stables, unless it is when the young ones are breaking in. There should be saddle-racks in each stable, and as boys are short, they should not exceed a height of six feet from the ground. Their place should be in the partitioning walls, in the centre of that part of the wall between the communicating doors and the ends of horses' stalls, with a peg under each. In each four-stall stable there should be four of these racks and pegs; in each three-stall stable there should be three; and two in each two-stall stable. On these racks are put aside the seven-pound saddles which the boys ride on to exercise, and the pegs are for the bridles and dressing muzzles. Nor do I see why boys in racing stables should not be called upon to pay a little more attention to the cleaning of the irons of their exercise saddles and bridles, than they were accustomed to do in my juvenile days.

At the back part of each three and four-stall stable, there should be in one corner, a corn bin, and in the other, a hay crib. These bins and cribs should be of the same dimensions, measuring in height from the ground three feet, the front part of them projecting from the centre of the walls two feet six. Each bin should be divided into two compartments, the one for corn, and the other for beans. In front of each corn bin a trap-door should be made, a foot and a half

broad and a foot in depth, to admit of the corn being easily got at when it gets low in the bin. A sieve would naturally find a place in each bin for the purpose of cleansing the corn, and a small wooden bowl will also be kept in each as a measure. It was formerly the custom with training grooms to measure the quantity of corn their horses ate by quarts, and not by quarterns, which being a very good plan, I hope they still adhere to it.

Strong constitutioned horses are good feeders, but in their feeding, as in their work, they may be overmarked, if the groom be not careful; for it is with these horses as with the light flighty ones, their food must ever regulate their work. A good groom is aware that he must get the corn into his horse if possible, but he is also aware that he must do it cautiously, and that he must be regulated by certain calculations, of which I shall have occasion to speak hereafter; and this it is that makes me rather particular as to what quantity of oats this little wooden bowl should be capable of containing: when filled, it should hold just a quart.

In each of the three and four-stall stables, close under the stable window (which may be said to be behind the stable door when it is open) should be placed a moderate sized bed settle, for two of the boys to sleep in. These settles are, or were so universally known in all race-horse stables, as to obviate the necessity of my giving a very particular description how they are made. The settles, when turned up during

the day, form themselves into seats, for noblemen or gentlemen to whom the horses belong, to sit upon; this they often do, to see their horses brushed over, and when talking to the training groom on business. The boys who sleep in the stables are, of course, those in whom the groom places implicit confidence; and to be enabled readily to obtain a light in the night in case of accident, a tinder box and matches should be left with them. The boys sleeping here are easily awoke by anything unusual occurring among the horses, and are immediately ready to render assistance to any horse that may be cast, or to tie up any one that may have got loose, which is a thing that sometimes happens. By taking these precautions, accidents are prevented, or often remedied at once; in short, these are precautions which should on no account be neglected, considering the very trifling accidents by which a horse may be prevented from performing his race, the disappointment of which might be of very serious consequence to the owner.

I will take the liberty here of digressing a little from the subject, merely to state, by way of illustration, an instance which occurred in the same stable in which I was living when a boy. I shall also give a short sketch of the life of a stable boy, to point out to my readers the impropriety of allowing the whole of them to sleep *over* the stables.

One morning on the groom's entering the stables, the horse I then looked after was found cast in his stall. How long he had been lying in that situa-

tion could not be ascertained, as none of us heard him in the night; but from the appearance of the horse's coat (although dry when he entered the stable), he had been sweating most profusely, and he must, no doubt, have been struggling for some hours, or perhaps the whole night. Fortunately he had not to run for some time afterwards. A horse, if cast a night or two before his race, no matter whether by accident, or from inattention in the groom not tying him up properly, and especially if he be a flighty one, might be put off his feed a day or two, which would greatly decrease his powers for the race. Indeed, from such a circumstance, he may come to post 7lbs. or a stone below his proper form, a weight which a horse in public running cannot easily give to those of his year, unless he has to run in bad company, or is himself a very superior horse. Grooms who have been long accustomed to the care of horses, are all aware, that amongst a number of horses, one will now and then, by rolling in the stall, get himself cast. Indeed, there are some horses, that soon contract the habit of rolling every night.

At the time of my having horses under my care, whenever I found one addicted to this habit, the method I usually adopted to prevent his indulging in it, was to make his bed perfectly level; that is, as high in the middle as on the sides, and then to tie his head up so short with the collar-rein as only to admit of his laying his body down, without the liberty of putting his head to the ground; in this way I have mostly succeeded.

Boys who live in race-horse stables are generally obliged to rise early in the morning during the summer months, but more particularly during July and August. At this season of the year, should any of the horses in the establishment require strong work, the groom must get such work into them before the sun has too much power. On such occasions, the groom himself, or the head lad, opens the stables at three o'clock in the morning; the boys are instantly roused up, and while the head lad is giving a double handful of corn to such of the horses as are usually allowed this small portion, the boys are hurrying on their clothes. Nor have they much time allowed them for their toilets; few of them waiting even to tie up their stockings, but content just to pull the tops of them over the knees of their breeches, when each boy immediately betakes himself to his duty in the care of his horse. This duty in the course of the day, together with the great desire he has, when at liberty, to indulge himself with different games of play (which he is allowed to do during those intervals of relaxation and amusement which intervene between the stable hours), prevents the weary boy from getting but a small portion of rest. At night, therefore, he is so fatigued, that when he gets to bed, he sleeps much too sound to be easily awakened by any noise that may be made in the stables from a horse getting loose, or being cast in his stall. This I know from experience; besides, a boy's ear is so accustomed to the noise made in the stables by the horses, at the hours of brushing

them over, that he is not so readily awakened out of a sound sleep in the night, when sleeping over the stables. I have, when a boy, on getting up in the morning (I may say between sleeping and waking), often promised myself the gratification of sleeping between stable hours in the day time; but when that period of recreation arrived, like the rest of my companions, I have allowed my little pleasures and amusements to take place of my rest.

But to return. The floors of the stables should be made of large flat paving stones, or bricks, as the architect shall think best. Each stable floor should be perfectly flat, with the exception of the least possible declivity in each horse's stall, and in that part of each loose box on which the horse stands at the time of his feeding.

If the broad flat paving stones should be preferred, they must all of them be fluted, so as to give them a rough surface, to prevent the horses from slipping when going in or out. For the sake of cleanliness, a certain portion of the stable walls should be wainscotted; and the wainscotting which covers the part in front of the horse's head, should be carried from the top edge of the manger, to the top part of the stall. If this wood-work were continued a foot higher, it would probably look much better. The wainscotting against the side walls, forming one side of the stall, should correspond in appearance with the wood-work which separates the stalls from each other. At the end of these side stalls, close to the oak stall-post, the

wainscotting should again commence, and be continued along the walls behind the horses, to the corresponding stall-post at the other side of the stables; and in height, the wainscotting should be even with the lower edge of the stable windows.

After every stable hour during the day, still more particularly at night when the horses are fed, dressed, and their beds set fair, wooden bails are put up in the back part of the stable, between each of the horses. Cavities to receive the ends of the bails are made in the stall-posts, and in the wall at the back part of the stable, into which the bails are put, and secured at the end in the wall. Chains were formerly used instead of bails; but the latter I think preferable. Ash is the best sort of wood to use in making these bails. The use of the bails is to prevent accidents, in case of any horse getting loose; he cannot then get into the stalls of those that are tied up. In some stables there are two bails thus fixed, one above the other. Some grooms give the preference to one: I think there is an objection to two, for a horse, when loose, may easily put his leg over the lower one, and injure himself.

The common method of fixing these bails is as I have above stated; but as they are unwieldy to handle in the stable, an improvement is practicable in arranging them. For instance, I see no objection to the boards of the stall being, as they sometimes are, double; in which case, they might be set a couple or three inches apart, and boxes with rollers might be

formed between them, for the bails to run upon—I think this would be much more convenient.

The spaces left for the loose boxes should be fitted up in a manner somewhat similar to that of the stables. The wood work on each side wall is to be put up in form of a stall, precisely as I have directed. It is to be put on each side of the side walls, as in the stables. Racks must be fixed in the left and right-hand corners, and in every respect like those in the stables. The manger should extend the whole length of the box in front of the horse's head, with proper conveniences for tying up two horses, upon the same principle as the mangers in the stables. There should also be two cribbing boards, so that occasionally either of the boxes might be converted into a two-stall stable. It is to be observed, however, that there is not to be in any of the boxes either racks or pegs, for putting away the exercise saddles and bridles of the horses that stand in them. These bridles and saddles, with the horses' spare cloths and muzzles, are, at all stable hours, to be taken to the common saddle-room.

It is also to be observed, that there are to be no encumbering projections, such as bins or bed-settles. If the latter could be conveniently let into the walls, such an arrangement would be a decided advantage in these boxes; as it would also be in the two-stall stables, if practicable: otherwise, a night or two before running, a temporary bed of clean dry straw and some horse-clothing may be made up at night in a corner of the box, for the boy who looks after the horse, to lie down

upon to sleep. His sleeping there will not disturb the horse, nor will the horse disturb him; unless the animal be a very vicious one, and in that case it may be advisable to tie him up, in the usual way, the night on which he is set.

As the horses will generally be loose in the boxes, precautions should be taken by the workmen effectually to secure the cupboards and stable doors. They should be made sufficiently fast to prevent the horses opening any of them; they are to be let into the walls, and not to project so as to hold out an inducement to the horses to play with them, as most race-horses will do with almost any thing they can get at.

Tin sconces, on each side the door of every stable and box, can be hung up for putting in lights, and I think they will answer quite as well as patent lamps. I remember when patent lamps and large curtains were used in some stables that I once lived in; but I see no necessity for this sort of costly splendour. I think the tin sconces will answer every purpose of the former; and the window shutters, of which I have made mention, will answer equally well that of the latter. Whether the doors in the dividing walls, which admit of a communication from one stable to the other, be made to slide back into the wall when opened, or whether they should open in the common way, is a matter of little consequence. Although the former mode appears most convenient, I fear they would be often out of repair. The better plan is certainly that which may be executed with the greatest facility, and

this may with safety be left to the decision and better judgment of the practical man.

Some noblemen and gentlemen who keep race-horses prefer having them wintered at home, where they forward them in their condition, previous to their being sent to the public training establishment. For this purpose, they keep their own training grooms, in whose honesty, and judgment in training, they necessarily place the most implicit confidence; yet, under certain circumstances, such as the convenience of getting better ground, or of being near the place of running, noblemen and gentlemen occasionally send their horses and boys to public training stables; and, considering their own grooms better acquainted with the constitutions and tempers of their horses than a stranger could possibly be, they are sometimes sent with them to large public racing establishments, in which the groom of course wishes to have the stables his horses are to occupy, entirely to himself; and, in order to meet this proper request, the communication from one stable to the other must be effectually cut off. Whenever it becomes necessary to close these communicating doors, it must be done effectually and satisfactorily to each party, so as to prevent any unpleasant suspicions from arising. It is, however, but just to observe, that grooms, though animated by a laudable feeling of rivalry towards each other, generally speaking, agree tolerably well as neighbours, even when they are living together in the same stable-yard, as they often do, for some time previous to their horses running at any par-

ticular meeting. Yet, if once their suspicions are roused by any unfair advantages attempted to be taken by their opponents, their minds are instantly set to work with a view to guard against all kinds of stratagems, and they watch every movement on the premises, with a jealous eye ; in short, " diamond cut diamond" then becomes the order of the day ; nor do they discard the feeling, which, under such circumstances, once becomes the inhabitant of their breasts, while they continue in the stable-yard together. To prevent such unpleasant occurrences, there should be strong locks and bolts on each side of each communicating door.

I believe I have now made mention of every thing that is necessary to an establishment of this sort, as well for the convenience of the groom and his boys, as for the comfort of the horses while in training. But as many of the horses will have to be treated differently in the winter, and as some of them will occasionally have to stand in different descriptions of stables and boxes ; and as there will be wanted barns and granaries for stores of hay, straw, corn, &c., and other offices for the use of those residing on the premises, I shall now trace the plan of different stables and offices to be erected for the above purpose, in the rear of the training stables.

This building is to be in height, fifteen feet, by twenty in breadth. In the centre is an open passage leading to the paddocks. In each side wall of the passage is to be a door ten feet in height, by five feet in

breadth, as entrances to two barns; the one for a store of hay, the other for one of straw. Proceeding now from the barn in the west wing (*see plan A.*), we come to a brew-house and a wash-house (*see plan B.*); following these is a shoeing stable (*see plan C.*) and smith's shop (*see plan D.*).

In the front wall of the smith's shop, and of the shoeing stable, two spaces are to be left, one for a common sized door into the smith's shop, and the other for a door of the same dimensions as those of the training stable. There are also to be two spaces of five feet by five, each, in the front wall of the shop, and of the shoeing stable, for windows; and in the partition wall which divides the smith's shop from the shoeing stable, must be a door for the smith to pass through from the one to the other.

In the shoeing stable, the rack and mangers may be placed as in the two-stall stables; but this stable is not to be divided by a stall. Here there must be a temporary division, which can easily be fixed or removed, as occasion may require. This will be found practicable, by making, at a proper distance from the manger, a square hole in the ground about two feet deep, and a wooden socket of proper dimensions to fix into it, which is to receive the lower part of the stall-post. This socket must be filled up with a plug, whenever the stall-post is taken out. There should also be a bail attached in a temporary manner to the stall-post and centre of the manger, by a safe and well-constructed hook at each end of the bail.

To the under surface of the bail, must be affixed a thick oak board, enclosing the whole open space from the stall-post to the manger, hanging down from the bail, within one inch of the ground. There should also be a board projecting out between the horses' heads for about a foot and a half from the centre of the wall, to prevent them from interrupting each other, while standing here to be shod. To provide for occasional wants, a rack-chain may be fixed in the centre of the stall as in the other stables. And to give the smith plenty of light to work by, there should be a window over the door, besides that behind the horse.

In erecting the walls in the interior of the smith's shop, the workman must place the fire-hearth on the left hand, attached to the back wall, and in the centre of it. The fire-hearth is to be raised from the ground, on a basis of four feet square, and is in height to be two feet eight. An opening of one foot square, is to be left in the centre, for the purpose of removing the cinders and ashes, as they accumulate. On the surface, beginning at the edge, and in the centre of the left angle of the hearth, there should be a round space gradually sunk, of sufficient dimensions to contain the fire. A foot to the right of the fire, and within one foot of the back wall, is to be an opening, communicating with that of a foot square below, so that the smith may conveniently throw off the cinders and ashes, as occasion may require. To the right of the hearth, attached to each other, there should be two cast-iron troughs, each two feet ten inches long, by ten inches

wide, and one foot deep; the one for coals, and the other for water. The fire irons and tongs can be kept, as is the usual custom, on the vacant space left in the centre of the hearth. The two side walls to be raised from the ground, and let into the back wall of the building, are also to be connected with the right and left angles of the hearth, and brought forward to each corner of the front angles of it; and in the rear of this left-hand wall, is to be fixed the bellows, and an opening will be left in the wall for the pipe, from the lower part of the sunken hearth which contains the fire.

On the interior surface of this wall is to be fixed a cast-iron toe iron; and near to the end of this left-hand wall, on about a level with the hearth, may be left a hollow space to contain sand, for the use of the smith. These side walls are to be carried up to a height of four feet seven, from the ground. The chimney piece being put across, and the chimney built up, the opening left for the smith to work by, will be four feet, by two feet in height.

The anvil (moderately small) should be placed opposite the centre of the hearth, at a distance from it, of three feet six inches. The wooden block on which it is usually put should be sufficiently broad, on its upper surface, to receive the tools with which the smith works at the anvil, namely, the turning hammer, fuller, stamp, chisel, and pritchel. When making plates, a crease is used for the purpose of fullering them, which on such occasions is fixed in the anvil; the

sledge generally remains in front of it when not in use.

A piece of ground in the right hand corner of the shop, might be fenced in by a wall three feet high, for the purpose of keeping a store of Swansea coals, for the use of the smith.

To the right, under the window, and close against the front wall of the shop, should be fixed a window or working bench, three feet from the ground, six feet long by two in breadth; to the right of which should be fixed a pointing stake, three feet two high; and on the left, the vice, the top surface of which should be three feet three from the ground. Under, and in the centre of the window bench, there should be a drawer three feet long by two wide; this drawer to be partitioned off into six compartments, and to be numbered from 4 to 9, both inclusive. A store of nails is to be kept in it at all times, ready for use: the size nails generally used for shoeing race-horses are Nos. 4 and 6, and for plating them, Nos. 4 and 5; those numbered 7, 8, 9, will occasionally be wanted for the hind-feet of large sized horses. When the smith is not at work, the shop should be locked up, to keep the boys out.

E, in the plan, is a gig-house; *F* and *G*, adjoining each other, are two loose boxes; the dimensions of these boxes are to be twenty feet by twenty, fitted up with a rack in each corner, and the manger to be the whole length of the box, so that when it is found necessary, these boxes may be converted into three-stall stables. In order that they may communicate with

the paddocks, they are to be so fitted up, that the length of them will take the breadth of the building. There are to be doors at each end, cut through the centre, so as to have, when requisite, the top parts open, for the admission of plenty of air. *H* is a granary, twenty feet by twenty-six: apertures are to be left in the walls of this building, for putting in a sort of Venetian blind, for the admission of air and light. Partitions, to contain corn, should be formed round the walls; they should be made moveable, as occasion may require, so that the boys, in turning the oats to keep them sweet, may easily shift them from one place to the other. There should also be some small partitions for beans, bran, chaff, and oatmeal: in this granary may be kept a chaff machine, and a mill for splitting beans. *I* is a space, left as a reservoir, for the accumulation of manure, with a wall raised to a sufficient height in front. *J* is a door leading to the paddock, in which the green food is grown.

In the east wing, No. 1 is a barn for straw. No. 2, a coal and wood house. No. 3, a loose box. No. 4, a four-stall hack stable, in which apertures are to be left in the front wall, for a door in the centre, and a window on each side, as in the other stables, and of the same dimensions as those in the front yard; and on the top of the stall posts there should be rings, to fasten pillar-reins to. There should also be the same description of ring, properly placed near to the top on both sides of each stall, as this stable may be occasionally wanted for colts to stand while being broke.

There will be no occasion for a bed-settle here. No 5 is a loose box. No. 6, a granary, fitted up as the one in the west wing; and besides corn, here may also be kept carrots, for the supply of such horses as may require them during the winter. A mill should also be kept here for the cutting or slicing of them. No. 7, are reservoirs for manure. And No. 8 is a door, leading into a paddock, which is for the growing of carrots.

That there may be a sufficient supply of water on the premises, wells must be sunk, and pumps fixed, with moderate sized stone troughs in front of them, and placed against the barns, as may be seen in the plan; but if it can be avoided, they are not to project beyond the parallel line of the building.

It may probably appear to some of my readers, that I have made an arrangement for more boxes than is necessary; but these last mentioned will answer very well for stale country-plate horses to winter in, or as hospital boxes whenever such may be required. As for example, in case of the training stable being full, and any horse that may be standing in a stall falling amiss, he can be immediately removed into a box. If the nature of his complaint be such as to require his removal from other horses, and that the horse that is to be moved will be happy in the box, persons unacquainted with racing might think it a very easy matter (provided the disease the horse laboured under was not contagious) to change the situation of the sick horse, by bringing one that may be healthy, from his

box to the stall where the sick horse stands, removing him into the box. This, in case of emergency, might certainly be done, if the horses changed belonged to the same person, or to two different persons, provided they were confederates; but it must not otherwise be attempted, for reasons which I make no doubt the reader will discover as he proceeds.

Good training grooms are, in all respects, particularly careful of the race-horses entrusted to their care, and are very cautious as to their health, being fully aware of the consequences that must naturally arise from any of them being ill. They take every precaution they can to prevent them from taking cold, and one of these precautions is, that no horse in training is allowed to be shod out of the stable in which he is accustomed to stand. This intentionally is very good, and in some few instances, it cannot be well avoided; but, as I shall presently show, such objections exist, as induce me to recommend the discontinuance of the general practice.

It is the custom with training grooms, the day previous to any horse's being shod, to send to the neighbouring smith and order him to attend (perhaps at the afternoon stables) to take measure, and make the shoes for the horse that is to be shod. Early on the following morning, it is usual for the groom to leave the horse in, or if he takes him out with the other horses, to arrange his work so as to send him in an hour earlier than the rest, that his shoes may be put on and the stables shut up at one time.

It has frequently happened under my own observation at the time of my living in the stables, that on the smith's arrival to shoe a horse, and having cleaned out his foot and made it perfectly level, he has found on placing the shoe on the foot, that it did not exactly fit. This is a thing which grooms are aware is not at all uncommon, the shoe being at times too broad, or what is worse too narrow, or perhaps too long; the former of these faults may be more easily rectified than either of the two others, when the shoe is cold; but the proper way to rectify such defects, would be for the smith to return to the shop, where, by heating the shoe again, he may make it something better, but even then perhaps not quite perfect. But the shop may be a mile or more from the stables, to walk which distance would occupy too much of the smith's time; therefore to save himself both time and trouble, he alters the shoe and makes it what he calls "fit the foot." If the shoe is too broad, he places it on the ground, and if too narrow, on some more convenient place, and by giving it two or three blows with the shoeing hammer, alters a light shoe, either by closing or widening it a little, as the case may require, leaving to chance how the length may answer, or how the horse may be able to go in the shoes thus improperly altered.

I have known horses in strong work, go immediately tender on the foot from their shoes being thus carelessly put on, and the smith has been at last obliged to take them off, return to his shop and heat them, in order to make the further necessary alterations.

Another objection to horses being shod in the stables is, that the smith selects, as he imagines, a sufficient number of nails, which, when he has straightened and pointed, he thinks will very well answer the purpose for the feet he is going to drive them into; but, on his arrival at the stable, and when proceeding with his work, he finds that he has not sorted them exactly as he could have wished. Some are too small, others too large; but, as I have already observed, rather than go back to his shop for such sized nails as he might want, the smith makes use of those he has with him, again leaving to chance the effect they may produce.

Some may be so large as to break a thin shelly foot more than there is really any cause for; and others may be so small as not to render the shoe sufficiently secure. If even the smith goes back to his shop, to make a better selection of nails, the horse is kept waiting, and that is a thing which ought to be avoided. A race-horse should not be put out of his way, nor made anxious, nor kept waiting, on any such occasion. Shoeing horses in the stables is not only slovenly, but unsafe, and more particularly with respect to race-horses; for, if from any of the causes above stated, a horse should be lamed, and perhaps severely so, his work must immediately be stopped, and not unlikely for a week or two: such a thing happening to a craving horse would occasion a great loss of time, in consequence of his putting up flesh from laying by. This might prevent him from coming out to meet his engagements. To prevent accidents arising from the in-

convenience of shoeing horses in the stables, is my reason for having arranged a smith's shop and shoeing stable in the back-yard of the establishment which I have been describing; and to shoe and plate the number of horses that may be supposed to be kept on premises of such dimensions, there will be full employment for a good shoeing smith. In all racing establishments, a smith's shop and shoeing stable will be found very convenient for the smith, to make the shoes and plates fit properly to the horses' feet to which they are to be applied. If the groom is afraid, that from bad weather or any other cause, his horse might take cold from being moved out of his own stables and standing in the shoeing stable during the time of his being shod, he may, before the horse comes out, order an additional sheet or two to be thrown over him; or it would be very easy, a night or two previous to the horse's being shod, to order a couple of hacks to sleep in the shoeing stable to air it; they could be moved out in the morning; one of them must, as a matter of course, to make room for the horse to come in to be shod; and if the horse should be a shy or irritable one, the other hack may be found useful to walk before him from his own stable door into the shoeing stable, and, if necessary, to stay there with him in case of his being restless, as many such horses are when being shod.

A training groom who has been brought up in the stables from an early period of his life, is fully aware what may, at times, be done by making use of a hack in this way, in getting flighty horses sometimes to

stand quiet to be shod or plated; and by the same means, some of them are brought to stand quiet at the time of saddling, when, for want of a rubbing-house on the ground for that purpose, the horses are necessarily obliged to be saddled on the course.

While a race-horse is being shod, the boy who looks after him will have to stand in the stall, attending to his head; and, if the horse be at all restless, it may be well to give him, at intervals, a little corn out of a sieve, merely to draw his attention a little from what is going on, and to prevent his becoming impatient. I have often had this done; by such means, and by gentle usage, I have succeeded in getting very troublesome young horses, as well as old ones, shod.

CHAPTER II.

GENTLEMEN'S PRIVATE TRAINING STABLES.

The stables of our noblemen and gentlemen, are most of them uniformly built, some of them forming very neat squares. In erecting them, there is generally a space of ground reserved in the front or centre of the building, which forms a convenient stable-yard, with a reservoir of water in the centre. Such stables for hunters, carriage-horses, and hacks, are commodiously arranged, and are so lofty, that when properly ventilated, they readily admit of a free circulation of pure air, which, at the present day, is tolerably well understood to be highly essential to the health of all animals in a domesticated state.

Many noblemen and gentlemen who keep race-horses, keep their own private training grooms. If they have ground in their own park or downs, near enough to their own houses, that will answer the purpose for their horses to train upon,—some prefer having them trained at home; and as their stables are ge-

nerally on an extensive scale, they appropriate a certain portion of them for their race-horses to stand in. Although their stables may be very good, and such as I have described, yet for many reasons, this is a bad plan ; the farther their race-horse stables are from those of their hunters and hacks, the better. As the expense can be but of little importance to gentlemen of fortune, I should advise their being built on a convenient piece of ground, at least half-a-dozen miles from their mansion. One reason for this is, that the boys could not so easily talk to their neighbouring companions, of what they see or know of the horses when they are training. I should also recommend noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, in erecting their training stables, to build loose boxes for most of their horses. Any number of them might be arranged according to the establishment of horses kept, on the dimensions of twenty-two feet by thirteen, clear of the walls ; and if fitted up as I have directed, a box or two, as occasion may require (for such horses as may do better in stalls), may, with little expense, be converted into a one or two good stall-stable.

Men vary in their opinions on the management of horses, as they do on other things, and, as I am an advocate for loose boxes (for horses of a certain class), in preference to stall-stables, it may not be here much out of place, to assign my reasons for that preference, and to show in what instances I recommend the use of the one rather than the other. Horses which are valuable, good runners, such as are engaged at Newmarket,

Doncaster or Epsom, but more particularly such of those horses as may be required to be in strong work, are the horses which will benefit most by being kept in loose boxes. The objection that is made to the use of them is, that when country plate horses are travelling, boxes are not often to be met with at inns on the road, neither are they at all times to be had at many of the inns where horses go to stand at the different country meetings; and that horses which have been accustomed to sleep in loose boxes, do not do so well when standing in stalls. This is correct: but the objection is more than counterbalanced by the advantages that arise. It would be attended with very little expense to landlords, on such roads as race-horses generally travel, and at such other inns, near to the different race-courses at which the horses stand, were they to arrange in their stable-yards a certain number of loose boxes; this would be a great accommodation to noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, and would be but a trifling inconvenience to a landlord, as such boxes, when not wanted for race-horses, might, with very little trouble, be converted into a bail stable, for a pair of post horses. Were such accommodations as these to be had at inns, there could be no objection made to certain race-horses standing in loose boxes at all times; but even the objection above stated, is not to be put in competition with the advantages which horses derive from being kept in boxes, if it were only that of avoiding the inconvenience arising from some horses unnecessarily disturbing others on sweating days, or

at other times when some may be in physic, and others not.

But before I proceed further with my observations on private stables, I will take an accurate view of both sides of the question; my readers will then find out what horses ought to stand in stalls, and what horses ought to stand in boxes; and which, in some measure, may guide the owner in the building of his private stables.

Now, the advantages to be derived from the use of boxes, are principally for such horses as may have returned in the autumn to the home stables, from a summer's country running. They have some of them become not only stale and round on their legs, but stale in themselves. All such horses are much sooner refreshed, by being allowed to range loose in boxes than they would be by standing in stalls; and it is in boxes that such horses should stand during winter, as well as while they are training. In regard to craving colts and horses that are in strong work, some of them will stand whole days in stalls, and may not lie down until night; from which circumstance I have known their legs fill, and get a little round; but if they are kept in loose boxes, although they may not lie down during the day, they will range and walk about, and thereby exercise their limbs, which would not only keep off the stiffness the work occasions, but prevent their legs from filling and getting out of shape. It is a great advantage to country platers, to get into boxes when travelling on the road, for such horses are mostly

craving ones, and in training, they are often in strong work; and not unfrequently when the ground is hard, most of these horses are long comers, and long comers are generally voracious feeders, and whether they stand in loose boxes or stalls, they feed equally well; therefore, for all such horses, loose boxes are the most proper. There can be no objection to loose boxes, except that which I have already stated; and I repeat that it cannot be put in competition with the advantages obtained by the use of them.

I shall now make my observations on stall-stables, and point out to my readers the horses that are likely to do best by being kept in them. The principal advantage of stall-stables is, that when three or four delicate horses are standing together in one stall, they feed better than they would do, were each to be kept alone in a loose box; for, generally speaking, such horses are not very good feeders; yet, at feeding time, when they hear the corn rattle in the sieve, they begin to neigh, and seem anxious to be fed, and they certainly do eat what corn is given them, with apparently a better appetite than they would if standing alone.

Another thing to be observed is, that horses of this description are seldom in physic; they are never in strong work, neither do they sweat, nor often run; and being treated pretty much alike, they do not disturb each other, by going out at any particular time. Those are the horses that (unless at such times when they are sick) are better standing in stall-stables than in boxes; only, it is to be observed, they are to be

kept strictly in their own class. Mares should also be kept in their own class, not only in their own class in regard to their constitutions and tempers, but there should be no horses standing in the same stable with them, as mares are often enough horsing, out of temper, and off their feed, without being made more so, by being put to stand in the same stables with the horses. Any craving mares that do well in loose boxes, should be kept in them; those that are restless and flighty when alone, should be kept in stall-stables.

It was formerly the custom, not only to put horses and mares in the same stables together, but it was also usual to work them together in the same class, without paying sufficient attention to their various constitutions and tempers; and when, from such improper treatment, delicate horses or mares have gone off their feed, it was usual with the trainer to stop their work.

This is a bad practice, and should be abandoned. If anything of this sort, through an oversight, does take place, the cause should be immediately removed, by removing the horse from the class in which he is not able to work; and the manner of bringing him again to his feed, I expect is not entirely forgotton by competent training grooms; at least I hope they do not deviate from the good old system (in this one particular) of arranging the feeding of their horses in such a manner, that the whole of them feed well at all times, (unless when sick,) according to their different constitutions. Of the constitutions and tempers of horses, and how different horses are to be fed, watered,

and worked, I shall treat more at length when speaking of their shape and make.

I have made these observations on the advantages of loose boxes for some horses, and stalls for others, merely as a guide to any nobleman or gentleman of the turf who may choose to build a range of stables for his race-horses to stand in. In regard to the situation in which the stables should be placed, as to aspect, the substance of the walls, and the different offices necessary to be attached to a private establishment of this kind,—such as a house for the groom, a hall for the boys, granaries for corn, barns for hay and straw, saddle rooms, &c. &c.—a plan and description of the whole of these may be taken from the arrangement of the public training stables, but on a reduced scale.

CHAPTER III.

ON VENTILATION.

HAVING, in the preceding chapters, pointed out all the arrangements necessary for an establishment of public training stables, I shall now treat on a very important point, that of ventilation.

One of the principal objects to which grooms should pay the most scrupulous attention, is that of the health of their horses; indeed, they have discovered that this object is, in a great measure, to be attained by keeping their stables much cooler than they formerly did; yet, as there may be some of the old school, who still adhere to the former practice, (that of hot stables,) I shall make a few observations on the impropriety of their so doing.

It was formerly the common practice among grooms, in the winter and spring, to regulate the temperature of the stables agreeably to their own feelings; and it was their custom, (at least, with those I lived under,) if the weather was at all cold, to have the long dung laid at

the bottom of the stable-door, and to have every aperture in the stable closed; this, together with the heat from the breath of the horses, and the fumes arising from the wet dung under them, made the stables, what was called by the groom, "comfortably warm;" for in those days it was the custom (to use the language of the stable,) "to muck out only twice a week." This temperature, I should say, if allowed to speak from my own sensations, far exceeded, in all probability, that of a hot-house, to say nothing of the impurity of such air. Indeed, at the time I am now alluding to, I could mention many proofs, in a variety of instances, of the inconsistency of a number of grooms in the management of horses; but I have great satisfaction in stating that the generality of these men now understand the thing much better than they formerly did. I may therefore be spared the unpleasant task of finding fault with such of them as were pursuing a wrong course, more particularly as they conscientiously considered that they were acting on principles which they thought strictly correct.

It is now pretty clearly understood, and indeed almost universally admitted by them, that a constant supply of fresh, pure air, is not only beneficial, but absolutely necessary for the preservation of the health of all horses taken from a state of nature, and placed in an artificial atmosphere; and this necessity becomes more absolute with regard to race-horses.

A race-horse must perform his *own* engagements; if he falls amiss, his work must be stopped, and his en-

gagement, which may be a heavy one, will most likely have to be done away with. This may prove not only a disappointment to the owner, but it may also be a great loss to him. As our breed of race-horses has originated in a hot climate, it becomes necessary when they are in training and have been drawn fine, independently of clothing them, to keep the stable they stand in in winter, up to a certain temperature of heat; and that it may be properly regulated, there should be kept in all race-horse stables a small self-regulating thermometer, by which to ascertain any variation of the heat in the stables that may arise from the changes in the atmosphere, or from any number of horses being taken out of the stables, or from others being brought into them. Either of these causes will more or less produce a change in the temperature of the stables, which may be observed by the rising or falling of the quicksilver in the glass.

Any change of temperature being ascertained from either of the above mentioned causes, the different apertures for the admission of pure air, and those for carrying off the foul, should be opened or closed as circumstances may require, until the quicksilver rises or falls to that degree in which the temperature of the stables may be considered by the groom comfortable and wholesome for the horses.

The degree of heat which I have generally found to answer this purpose, is, in winter and spring (if the horses are properly clothed) at about sixty-two. In July and August, the stables are generally very hot;

but this, of course, arises more from the heat of the atmosphere than from that of the horses. At this season of the year, the shutters should be closed by day, to keep out the sun, but the apertures for the admission of pure air should all be kept open, as should also those for letting out the foul air. At night it may be necessary to close them to a certain extent, but the groom in this respect should be guided by the appearance of the night, as well as by the indications of the thermometer: and, on such occasions, he is to use his own judgment accordingly.

It is in the hot summer months that the summer clothing comes into use, *in* the stables as well as *out* of them, for such horses as may require the change; and it will, of course, be necessary to diminish the quantity, in regard to such as require the winter clothing to be continued; to a single quarter piece, for example; but when they go out, a hood and breast-cloth can be added, either a linen or a woollen one, as the groom may best approve. When clothing the horses up at night, it may perhaps be requisite for the whole of them to sleep in their woollen clothes; but in this case, the groom must again be guided partly by his own judgment of the appearance of the night, and the delicacy or strength and constitution of the different horses, as also by the appearance of the thermometer; but at the season of the year to which I am alluding, race-horses have, most of them, been drawn fine by physic and strong work. From these circumstances, they are generally in good health, or rather they are

not so liable in this state to fall constitutionally amiss, as they would otherwise be likely to do from the different changes of the weather early in spring, at which time many of them are pretty lusty.

But the stables that young ones are first to occupy on their leaving their paddocks, should be perfectly cool. The windows and different apertures in the walls and ceiling, should be kept open for the first ten days or fortnight; and when it is thought necessary to increase the warm of the stables, it should be done very gradually, by closing a window at a time; as it would be extremely dangerous to subject young ones, full of flesh, to the usual temperature of heat in a race-horse stable.

Having, in the preceding chapters, arranged the stables, and in this, described how they ought to be ventilated, I will, in the next, offer a few remarks upon a disease by which horses now and then become affected, and which is, at times, occasioned by irregularities, both *in* as well as *out* of the stables.

CHAPTER IV.

ON THE DISTEMPER.

Race-horses, like all others, are of course liable to become constitutionally amiss, and they are very often subject to a disease commonly called the distemper, with which some of them are at times severely affected, much to the annoyance both of their owners and trainers, as they are thereby thrown back in their condition, and are often prevented from running for the different plates and stakes for which they may have been entered.

It has been a rule with me whenever the disease has made its appearance among horses in the regiment in which I am serving, to remove those which have been affected from those which were in health; as I have frequently observed, from horses standing next to each other in bail stables (the custom in his Majesty's service), that those which have been labouring under the disease have not been removed more than a day or

two, before those which had stood next to them have become affected ; and in the space of a fortnight, I have had a hundred horses affected with the disease, while the remainder of the regiment has continued in a healthy state. These are circumstances which of course have happened to other Veterinary Surgeons, in similar situations, as also to grooms (although, to these, not to the same extent), who may have had the care of horses, and which circumstances may have led these last mentioned to suppose the disease contagious. This, perhaps, is doubtful. That a peculiar state of the atmosphere often produces the disease, I believe is not to be questioned, and that exposure to the same causes will occasionally produce the same effect, will be readily allowed. Young horses are not only more liable to become affected by the disease, but they suffer more severely from it than old horses generally do.

From the observations I have made during the time of my living in the stables, I am of opinion that horses sometimes become affected, in a slight degree, with this distemper, or something very like it, as coughs and colds, attended with fever, when they are in what is so commonly called, high condition—that is,very lusty, as some race-horses (country platers) are, early in the month of March. I am induced to think they become thus affected, from grooms not paying sufficiet attention to the regularity of the temperature of the stables, as well as to the clothing of their horses ; more particularly so, when in the mornings at the

commencement and the close of spring, they are going out upon the open downs to exercise. At this season of the year it is that horses are most liable to be amiss from such complaints, and if not immediately attended to, such complaints become worse, and terminate in the distemper, or what is often more difficult of cure, inflammation of the lungs.

Training grooms are very watchful over their horses, and the moment they find them coughing, they have recourse to bleeding; and in slight cases of colds and fevers, they were much in the habit of giving their horses morning and evening an ounce or two of the sweet spirits of nitre in some warm gruel or beer. By the early application of the above medicine (which in such cases is a very good one) they often put a stop to the further progress of the disease, and thereby got their horses well, so as in a short time to have them at their work again, which to the groom is an object of great importance.

But when the distemper comes on, attended with the usual samptoms—as the horse being taken with a shivering; being off his food; having a slight cough; the glands of his throat enlarged, his mouth hot, and his legs swollen: if a groom takes upon himself the treatment of a horse labouring under the above slight symptoms, he generally has recourse to the constitutional remedies already mentioned, and his local applications are poultices, or a mild embrocation to the throat, with warm clothing about the head. Nor in slight cases of the distemper are those external

remedies by any means injudicious. But in his constitutional treatment of the disease, I should advise his dispensing with the use of sweet spirits of nitre, and to give, in lieu thereof, medicines which will gently relax the bowels; and when the horse appears to be in a convalescent state, he may then give the spirits of nitre, morning and evening, with considerable advantage.

The symptoms attending the distemper will, of course, occasionally vary in different horses, depending much on the violence of the attack. Those symptoms first mentioned will most of them be present, but in a more violent degree; the respiration and pulse is much increased, the latter often from sixty to seventy; the eyes sometimes appear inflamed and watery; the parotid and maxillary glands, or in other words, the glands about the throat and under the jaws, are inflamed and enlarged; the membranes of the nostrils, throat, and wind-pipe, are also highly inflamed. The throat being very sore, the horse has great difficulty in swallowing his food and water, but more particularly the latter, if given cold; he sips and slavers in the pail, and coughs repeatedly; added to the above symptoms, great debility often ensues in the course of a few days. The horse sometimes becomes so weak, that in moving in his stall or box, he is near falling. I have known some horses so well aware of their debilitated state, as to place their quarters against the wall of the box, in order to support themselves while standing.

When a horse first becomes affected with this disease, if, at the time, he is standing in the stable with other horses, he should immediately be removed to a well-ventilated loose box. A good bed should be given to him, and he should be comfortably clothed. The next step to be taken is bleeding; but, as the disease is so often followed by debility, neither bleeding nor purging should be carried to too great an extent. The quantity of blood taken should be regulated according to the age, size, constitution, and condition of the horse, together with the appearance of the symptoms under which he labours. When a horse in good condition, or perhaps lusty, is labouring under the effects of the distemper, provided he be immediately attended to, no great debility will have taken place. In which case, the horse may be bled with safety to the extent of five pints or three quarts, only observing to attend to his age, constitution, &c. The next thing is to get the horse's bowels gently relaxed, but brisk purging must be avoided. If the horse should be a flighty, delicate one, the better way of relaxing his bowels, is by giving him a pint of castor oil; but, if he should be such a horse as, in training, is termed "a hearty one," the more effectual way of relaxing his bowels, is by adding aloes to his oil, in the following proportions,—

Barbadoes aloes . .	2 drachms
Castor oil	6 ounces

Dissolve the aloes in four ounces of warm water, then add the oil. There is a third description of horse, which, in training, is called "a craving one." It is, at

times, rather difficult gently to relax the bowels of a horse of this description. In order, however, to reduce it to as near a certainty as possible, it is advisable to make a further addition to the aloes and oil; to the former, one drachm; and two ounces to the latter. The above medicines, given in their different proportions, according to the delicacy or strength of the horse's constitution, will have the desired effect—that of relaxing or of very gently purging him. If a groom observes that a horse, on his being first taken ill, is costive in his bowels, he should rub some oil or lard over his hand and arm, and, compressing the former, he should gently introduce it up the fundament, and remove any hard excrement with which his hand may come in contact; after which, he should administer a clyster of milk-warm thin gruel, for the giving of which, an ox's bladder with a wooden pipe (well oiled) attached to it, is, I think, preferable to the pewter syringes used for this purpose.

With regard to diet, a horse in this, as in most other constitutional diseases, feeds but sparingly; yet hot bran mashes should often in the course of the day be put into his manger, and his head should be held over them, with a view to promote as early as possible, a healthy discharge from the nostrils, which, when it takes place, gives great relief. His hay should be wetted, but not put in the rack; he should eat it off the ground; but if his throat be very sore, it may be put in the manger. Green meat, fresh cut, is to be preferred, if it can be had: his drink should be warm

gruel, given to him often during the day, the bucket being held up for him to take it; or, perhaps it would be better to secure the bucket in the stall at a convenient height from the ground, so that the horse may take it as often as he likes.

The progress of recovery, after the operation of the medicine ordered, will depend on the constitution of the horse and the nature of the attack. In slight cases, some horses shake off the effects of the disease in seven or eight days, while others remain labouring under the debilitated effects of it, for two or three weeks. Under these last mentioned circumstances, as the soreness of the throat and cough become much better, and the pulse approaches to the natural standard of health, the groom may with great advantage have recourse to his favourite medicine, the sweet spirits of nitre; an ounce of which, in beer, or in moderately thick gruel, may be given to a horse three times a day. The horse now appears more lively in his countenance, and may be most likely inclined to feed. If he is much debilitated, his strength should be recruited by giving him plenty of gruel; and any thing by way of change that he is disposed to eat, should be provided for him,—as malt mashes, scalded oats, good sweet clover or other hay, or green meat.

If it be a light delicate horse, and have been but slightly attacked with the distemper early in the spring, the groom may have some hopes of bringing him out in time, to run according to his engagements. But if the horse be a craving one, and have suffered long

from a severe attack of the disease, great good will not be done with him much before the autumn. When a horse has recovered from the disease, the manner of his feeding, together with his general appearance as to freshness, are the criterions by which the groom must be guided in gradually bringing the horse again into work, so as to have him in his usual or proper form.

I have here laid down such a course of treatment as I would advise a training groom to follow, in the case of a horse affected with the distemper, and to an extent which I think is as far as a man of his experience can safely be trusted. If a groom finds, in the course of his treatment, that unfavourable symptoms are approaching, as that of a horse's respiration becoming increased, his ears and extremities being cold, and his pulse much quickened (which latter, by the bye, a groom should endeavour to make himself acquainted with), it is the lungs, in all probability, which are becoming affected. Under such unfavourable appearances, a groom should lose no time in calling in the aid of an experienced veterinary surgeon.

CHAPTER V.

FOOD.

The sort of hay the most proper for horses in training, is the hard upland hay ; which if it has been well got in, will not only retain much of its natural colour, but will also possess that agreeable flavour and sweetness, which is invariably observed in that which has been well made. It may be used for horses the following year. Neither new hay nor such as may have been much heated in the rick should ever be given to craving horses : neither should they have clover hay, for if those horses generally in strong work, be allowed to eat new hay, they become relaxed in their bowels, and will sweat profusely with very little exertion. Hay that is much heated in the rick is sweet in its taste, and from the quantity horses are inclined to eat of it, it produces great thirst. This is a sufficient reason for its not being given to such horses in training as may be in strong.

Clover hay, well made, may be given to some of the

light delicate horses, by way of a change; but it should not be given to craving horses, which are apt to feed too voraciously on it.

Oats, which my readers know, constitute the principal food for horses of all descriptions when in work, are the cleanest, the best, and perhaps the most nutritious of any of the different sorts of corn, and they appear to agree with the different constitutions of all horses. For those in training, they should, of course, be of the very best quality,—sweet, heavy, and thin in the skin. They should not only be well winnowed, but particularly well screened before they are brought from the farmer's, so as to do away with all the small thin light oats, and tailings. It is better that the oats should be thus cleaned before they are delivered into the stables, than that they should be thrashed or beat in sacks by the boys between stable hours, a little at a time, and, as was the practice, afterwards winnowed by them, by letting them fall from the sieve into some spare sheets or quarter pieces laid on the heath for the purpose on a windy day.

Beans are very nutritious; they are of an astringent and heating nature, and if given too liberally, they produce great thirst, and make some horses very costive. Craving horses do not require them. These horses, when in training, eat from twelve to fifteen quarts of oats per day, by which their constitutions are sufficiently nourished, therefore beans need not be given them, unless when travelling. If a groom, when travelling with horses, observe the hay and corn at the

inns to be bad, or even indifferent, he may, under such circumstances, give beans to craving horses as well as to others, with a view to keep them to their mark; but strong constitutioned horses *only* require them on such occasions.

Very light delicate horses are mostly pretty clear in their wind, but are generally very irritable in their constitutions. Their bowels are almost constantly in a relaxed state, and whenever they are alarmed, they are much in the habit of what is termed "throwing off their meat." Beans being mixed with oats for such horses, as well to nourish them as by way of change, are at all times absolutely necessary, as there is not much danger of their becoming constipated in their bowels. Beans may be given more liberally to these horses than to any other, their digestive organs being always found adequate to perform the office of digesting the small portion of food taken into the stomach, at each time of being fed. Indeed, such light delicate horses as I am now alluding to, may eat and drink as much as they like, and of what they like that is wholesome, and will afford them nourishment; for if by the means of nourishing food they can be got to put up a little extra flesh, the groom may now and then steal an additional gallop into them, or let them come a little longer length in one, which would be the means of bringing them a little stouter, and thereby enable them to come the length they have to run, with rather more ease to themselves. If so, they will be the less alarmed when pulled up after their race. Horses which eat

from ten to twelve quarts of oats during the day, and drink moderately, may occasionally have beans given them in their corn.

When beans are given to such horses in training as require them, they should be hulled and split; and of such, a double-handful may be mixed in each feed of corn. They should not be given in large quantities, neither should they be given alone.

I remember an instance, about six years since, of a horse breaking loose in the stable, and getting at some beans, and eating a great quantity of them; from which circumstance he became very ill. I was asked by the owner to examine the horse, which I did, and the symptoms I observed to be present were those of his being in a torpid state. He was very thirsty, his mouth hot, and his pulse was nearly a hundred; he was extremely costive, and his urine, when voided, was of the colour of strong coffee. I recommended to the owner such remedies for his relief as I thought most likely to succeed with him, and the horse eventually recovered.

White pease and wheat mixed with the oats were sometimes given, by way of change, to delicate horses, and to induce them to feed; but while they feed moderately on oats and beans, I certainly should not recommend the addition of either of the former.

Chaff is a mixture of about equal parts of the best sort of hay and wheat straw, cut short in a machine. This sort of food is mostly given to horses in common use, for the purpose of making some of them grind their corn, that would otherwise swallow it whole, by

feeding too voraciously. It is for this purpose sometimes given to race-horses, when laying by in the winter; but the straw is generally omitted.

The best sweet clover hay, cut into chaff, and a little of it mixed with the corn, given to the light delicate horses, even when in training, is not a bad thing, by way of change, and as an inducement for them to feed.

Bran is generally used in the preparing of horses for their physic, it being made into mashes with hot water, and suffered to remain covered up in the bucket until sufficiently cool, when it may be given them. In winter, it is a useful sort of food for such horses as are apt to be costive from the quantity of corn they eat. A mash of equal parts of bran and oats, given two or three times a week to such horses as may be laying by in winter, is very efficacious in keeping their bodies in a proper state. Some craving horses, from resting during the winter, are inclined to put up a great deal of flesh: this may be allowed to do, to a certain extent; but I am not aware of any advantage to be derived from allowing them to grow so very fat, as some of them will do. As far as my observations have gone on this matter, horses are certainly more liable to constitutional diseases, when in too plethoric a state.

Such horses as are inclined to put up a great quantity of flesh, should occasionally have mashes given them as I have above advised, and these, with an occasional half dose of physic, will keep them cool, and prevent them from getting too lusty.

When I was a boy, it was the custom with some

grooms to make bread composed of equal parts of beans, wheaten-flour, and oat-meal, and not unfrequently some stomach medicines, such as are generally used in cordial balls; these being mixed together into a paste with eggs and ale, and then baked. This sort of bread was given to the horses for a short period before they run; when sufficiently stale, it was crumbled and mixed with their corn. This practice, which is a most pernicious one, has, I hope, long since been done away with. When race-horses are once taken into training, they should be kept in the stables both summer and winter until they have completed their running. If turned out for three or four months, as hunters usually are, (but which, by the bye, is very injudicious, as I have often known those with large carcasses come up with very bad and sometimes incurable coughs,) they would doubtless get rid of the staleness arising from the work they have had. Their constitutions would no doubt be much refreshed by the beneficial effects of the pure air and green food, provided the season were dry and the paddocks not too large. Their legs and feet would also be much benefitted, the former from the gentle exercise they would give themselves in this natural state, and the latter from the soft surface of the ground; yet these advantages are more than counterbalanced by the mischief which at times results. Those race-horses which require refreshing the most are those of a strong constitution, and such as have been much abused by strong

exercise, travelling, and repeated running. But the objection to turning out horses of this description is, they have generally voracious appetites; not being satisfied with eating grass only, but they eat a quantity of dirt, or any other stuff about the grounds they meet with and fancy. If a horse of this sort were to be turned out for three or four months, he would at the end of that time have become very fat, soft, and bloated; and when taken up, he would be unreasonably coarse and out of form; the muscles of his body and tendons of his legs, from want of proper attention, would have become very much relaxed. To get the horse again into training condition, could not perhaps be done so effectually as it would have been in the first instance; and if it could, it would take as much time and trouble (exclusive of breaking) as when he first left his paddock as a colt.

In some stables in which I once lived, I remember an instance of a race-horse which belonged to my master being kicked in the hock, and the part becoming much swollen. Various were the remedies applied, without reducing the enlargement; at last, it was thought advisable to turn the horse out, night and day, into a large paddock, it being supposed, from the gentle exercise he would then give himself, that the hock might become fine. But this latter remedy had not the effect desired, that of reducing the enlargement. How long the horse remained out I do not remember; but I very well recollect, when he was taken up, that

he was in the plethoric state I have just described, and I believe he was not put in training after.

I have here related the above fact, merely to point out to those of my readers who may not be well versed in the management of race-horses, that there is no real advantage to be gained in turning them out,—at least, the craving ones. It is much against them, if they are afterwards intended to be trained. These horses require, when in training, to be kept in pretty strong work to keep them clean in their muscles, and clear in their wind. Such work being continued regularly for a long time (as it often is with country plate horses) brings them not only stale on their legs, but stale in their constitutions, and sooner or later renders them unfit to run in their best form. It therefore becomes necessary to refresh such horses during the periods which intervene between one meeting and another. Some of them, as I have already noticed, are refreshed by physic alone, but this is generally done to save time.

When all the conveniences can be had for the purpose, the most natural and judicious way of refreshing such horses is, by giving them rest for a sufficient time, and soiling them in the stables for ten days, a fortnight, or three weeks, as the judgment of the training groom may best approve.

The descriptions of green food given to race-horses for this purpose are tares, vetches, lucerne and clover grass. These grasses should be sown so as to have a succession of crops in the highest perfection for the

supply of the horses, from early in the spring till late in the autumn. They should be cut just before they begin to blossom, when they are young and full of juice, and should never be given when rank and overgrown. Each stable-boy should cut for his horse a rubber-full or two every stable hour, so as to have them quite cool and fresh.

Depending on the constitutions of different horses, and the quantity of green meat given them, so will each horse become affected by its use. Such as may have become stale from strong work, or abused from country running, require the greatest quantity; and with a view to increase the action of their bowels and kidneys as much as possible, their green meat should be first given them alone—I mean, unmixed with hay. There is not the danger in purging them with it as with strong physic, although it has often, on those occasions, all the advantages of the latter. It is their natural food, and, as well as gently purging them, promotes, to a great extent, the secretion of urine, which is seldom produced by physic. If they purge for a day or two, they become a little light, as thay would from the use of physic; but they do not become either weak or faint, nor lose their appetite, which is often the case with many of them, when purged by too large a quantity of aloes The usual allowance of corn may be given to all of them, at the time of their being soiled, unless the groom is of opinion that from its astringent property, and the quantity craving horses eat, it may prevent the green meat (as it is termed)

from acting as a purgative. Under these circumstances, less corn may be given for a day or two, or it may even be discontinued for that time; for it is a great point carried, if a craving horse, when on green food, can be got to purge and stale moderately by its use; that is, provided he is not engaged to run again in a short period.

Those horses, which by some grooms are termed hearty or light-hearted ones, are by such appellations understood to be in the medium, as regards the strength of their constitutions; that is, they are between the very light horses and the very craving ones. As these horses require less work to prepare them for running, they are not so frequently stale on their legs, or in themselves; yet, like those first mentioned, if abused by being too frequently run, they become so, and they then require to be refreshed, as directed above, with this exception, that they seldom require to be purged either by green meat or physic to that extent the craving ones do. Their green food may be given them mixed with their hay. As the very light delicate horses cannot stand work to run often, they are never stale on their legs, and are very seldom so in their constitutions; yet green food occasionally given to these horses, by way of variety, is an excellent thing for them. Green meat given to different horses for the period I have mentioned, or as occasion may require, in the spring, summer, or autumn months, is a most salubrious and refreshing sort of food, if cut when young and full of juice. It promotes the secretion of

the different glands of the body, and thereby renovates the whole mass of fluids. The bowels become for two or three days not only relaxed, but often gently and effectually purged, from the effects of which the horse's legs become cool and in shape, and the stiffness of his limbs as well as the staleness of his constitution (occasioned by strong work) are carried off. A horse having been thus refreshed, he may be said to be in the highest state of perfection—that is, as far as regards his health; but how he is to be brought into the highest state of condition, will be fully explained in its proper place.

In winter, when green food is not to be had, carrots are an excellent substitute: they are cool, nutritious, and easy of digestion. When washed and sliced, they may be given daily in moderate quantities in each feed of corn. to any of the craving horses that may be laying by in loose boxes, and that do not go out to exercise during the winter months. They may be also given to the light delicate horses, or any others that are not in strong work in the winter.

The best wheat straw is the most proper for horses' bedding.

CHAPTER VI.

ON WATER.

Soft, fresh, wholesome, pure, rain, river, or pond water is, of course, the most proper for horses; but the last-mentioned being a stagnant water, should not be used, unless it be on a clear, clay, or chalk bottom. On such surfaces it is not likely to ferment from the heat of the weather. Pond-water, when thus tainted, should not be given to any animal.

All that may be necessary for me to mention, for the information of grooms, in regard to the properties of water beyond that of quenching the thirst of horses is, that it cools the habit, dilutes the blood and fluids of the body, promotes the natural secretions, and assists digestion.

Water is never to be given to craving horses in training immediately before their food, nor immediately after. Horses of a delicate constitution, which feed very sparingly, may be allowed to drink almost at any time they like. Craving horses eat a great quantity

of food; water given to them immediately after, occasions the grain to swell, and this produces a distension of the stomach, weakens its contracting powers, and thereby retards the process of digestion. Nor should water be given them immediately before or after their work: it is never done by good training grooms.

If the day is wet, and the groom is obliged to water his horses in the stables, whether in the morning or the evening, the water should be given them just before they are stripped to be dressed, which is an hour before they feed; nor are they, when at exercise, to be watered on the heath until the strongest of their work is got into them; they are to be walked for an hour or more, or until they are perfectly cool, before they go to the troughs to drink.

The water on the premises of a racing, or any other establishment, is mostly well or spring water; and, whether hard or soft, it is generally made use of for the horses, unless it is observed to be any way detrimental to their health, which declares itself by their becoming chilly, trembling, or perhaps a little griped after taking it. To prevent hard water from producing these bad effects, it should first be put into the troughs in the yard, with some clay and chalk to soften it, and during the day, the lids of the troughs should be left up, so as to expose the water to the heat of the sun.

When the horses are kept in the stables from other causes than from the wetness of the day, whether in summer or in winter, such water as I have made men-

tion of, should never be given them cold from the pump or well. It should be taken from the troughs, and mixed with hot water, and given to them chilled.

A common wooden bowl, capable of containing about two quarts, with a handle to it, is as convenient a vessel as any for the purpose of taking the water out of the boilers, troughs, or cisterns, at the time of mixing it in the buckets.

In the heat of summer, if it has been exposed to the sun, or kept in the buckets in the stable for some hours, it will not, of course, require to be so much chilled as in winter.

When horses are out at walking exercise in winter, it is certainly preferable (unless the season be very mild) to let them have their water, as I have just observed, with the chill off. It can be got ready by the boys who remain in, and the horses may be walked up to the stable door to be watered.

Craving horses, and light delicate ones, should be watered often in the course of the day; the former should be thus watered, with a view to bring them to drink more moderately, and the latter, with a view, if possible, to induce them to drink more liberally. Those last mentioned, as they are at all times clear in their wind, may have some oatmeal or bran mixed in their water, as an inducement for them to drink. A craving horse eats a great quantity of food; he therefore requires a larger quantity of water to assist in the digestion of it; and if such a horse were watered only twice in the course of a day, he would (if allowed to

do so) drink an immense quantity at each time. Another reason for this horse's drinking more water than any other is, that when he is in training, he is mostly in strong work, and often sweating; and from these causes he becomes more thirsty. The best way to water such a horse, (in the *early* part of his condition, but not otherwise) is, to give it to him often and in small quantities, which is the most likely to bring him to be a more moderate drinker. If he stands in a box, it would be a good plan to leave a bucket of water with him, (unless immediately before or after either sweating or running); it may easily be judged what quantity he has taken, and if it be observed that he has emptied the bucket but a short time before he goes out to exercise, it is only to let him be at walking exercise for a longer period before he takes his gallop, and not to let his gallop be quite so severe; but this experiment is only to be tried in the *early* stage of his condition.

The light delicate horse is, in almost all respects, the very reverse of the craving one; he eats and drinks but sparingly, can take but little work in training, and is so very delicate that he seldom or ever has to sweat; and from fifteen to five-and-twenty, or thirty go-downs is as much as many horses of this description will drink during the whole day.

On all occasions, the greatest care should be taken not to let a horse of this class become alarmed. If at any time he gets frightened in his exercise, or is bullied, by the boy not being sufficiently patient with him, he will most likely not drink when he comes to the

trough, but will stand with his head up, staring and looking wildly about him. A horse of this sort should be tried with some water as soon as he goes into the stable, and as I have before observed, as an inducement to him to drink, a little oatmeal or bran may be mixed in it. If he will not drink it on its being offered, the bucket of water may be put down at the end of the stall, and when the horse is round, having his head and neck dressed, he will sometimes take it quietly of himself; the boy should allow him to do this without noticing him, for if the boy stops dressing his neck or fore legs, the horse will most likely stop drinking, which would be a pity, for if these delicate horses can be brought to drink but moderately, they will many of them feed much better after it, which is a matter of consideration.

Race-horses, like many others, are at times affected with diabetes, or what by grooms is more commonly called, the jawpiss. This disease is generally brought on either by the change of food or water. Horses in common use, as those of the army, when fed on ship oats, which may have been heated by lying too long in the vessel, become immediately affected with this disease in a violent degree. There are particular herbs in the hay which will sometimes produce it, as will also hard brackish water. The first step towards a cure is, to remove the cause which may have produced the disease, by changing either the food or the water; and the remedy generally had recourse to, is that of mixing lime in the water, by putting it either into the

troughs or buckets. The quantity of lime used, should be such as to produce rather a nauseous taste. The water being thus impregnated and given them to drink, generally puts a stop to the disease. Horses, so affected, are rather shy in drinking at first; but the complaint being attended with some degree of fever, they are mostly dry, and although the water is unpleasant to their taste, yet to gratify their thirst, they soon come to drink it.

If the above remedy does not shortly remove the disease, it would be advisable in the groom to call in the aid of a good *practical* veterinary surgeon, who will instantly have recourse to such other treatment as from the symptoms he will see requisite for the relief of the horse.

The remarks I have here offered, relative to water and the watering of horses, are the result of the observations I have made during my practice in the stables; and I have at all times adhered to the system which I have laid down, whenever I have had horses under my own care, and with the happiest results. I am aware that these precautions are scarcely necessary to good, careful, and experienced training grooms; but as I am writing for the information of grooms in general, they are such as, I deem, may at times be found available by many.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON PHYSIC.

The autumn and spring are the two seasons of the year, in which most race-horses are to be physicked; but what particular time in those seasons their physic should be given them, must depend on how late different horses may be engaged for the autumn, or how early their engagements may again take place in the spring.

It is not my intention to enter into a long detail here, relative to the physicking of horses labouring under the various diseases to which they are liable, as this subject has been already very ably treated by the different authors who have published on the veterinary art. I shall therefore confine myself to the accidents and diseases which are likely to take place in the legs of horses in training, and to point out the advantages of administering physic to them on such occasions. To this I shall add a few precautionary remarks, and point out how they are again to be brought into work.

I shall further explain the benefit to be derived by giving physic at various other periods, to such of them as may require it, when in a healthy state, to bring them into racing form.

The frequent necessity of purging race-horses, and the usual quantity of aloes prescribed in each dose by training grooms, do not appear to be approved by several of those who have published on the veterinary art. They appear to be of opinion, that the physicking system is altogether carried to too great an extent in race-horse stables. They may have been led to form this opinion, by observing that all horses in common use when in health, do their work extremely well without being so repeatedly purged; and they also find in their private practice, that when it is necessary to purge horses of this description, a much less quantity of aloes will answer the purpose, than is generally given by training grooms to race-horses. As far as my experience has gone in the physicking of horses in the cavalry, I think those authors are perfectly right: they have therefore, very judiciously, recommended in their different publications light doses of physic, to prevent the very bad effects of horses being over-purged; and since the establishment of that valuable institution, the Veterinary College, and the distribution of its pupils into different parts of the country, I have no doubt but the lives of some hundred of horses, or perhaps thousands, may have been saved by the moderate doses of physic which have long since been prescribed, by veterinary surgeons, for horses in general use. I

allude to such horses as are employed either in business or for pleasure, as cart and carriage horses, hacks, and horses in the cavalry. Such horses as I have here made mention of, unless labouring under disease, will not, in all probability, have a dose of physic given them in the course of the year; and many cart and carriage horses may be in the possession of their owners for seven or fourteen years without ever having a dose of physic administered to them, or perhaps during their lives. Nor do I see that they require it, provided they are in good health. Hacks may require physic more frequently than cart or carriage horses, or horses in the cavalry, as they are generally going a tolerable good pace, and in consequence of the weight being placed on their backs, they are more liable to become stale on their legs; and from these circumstances, may require physic and rest to refresh them, more frequently than the other description of horses above-mentioned. Now, should any horse in common use fall amiss, we will say, on one of his fore legs, either from the leg having been violently strained or bruised, and from which the horse becomes so lame as not to be able to go on with his work, he is laid by, and the owner puts another horse of a similar description to work in his place; and this the owner may do without any very great inconvenience to himself. The horse which may have received the injury, may be treated, as the case may require, with the usual external applications of poultices, fomentations, bandages, and rest; and this sort of treatment may be sufficient, probably

without the assistance of physic. The horse being allowed to rest until the inflammation subsides, and the parts having recovered their former tone, he again becomes sound, and from his having lain by for a long time he gets lusty, and when perfectly recovered from the accident, the owner consoles himself by observing that his horse has become fat, and in fine condition.

This may be all very well with a horse in common use, but it is quite another thing with a race-horse. In the first instance, his engagements will not allow of his being replaced; and I am fully aware, should any accident happen to a race-horse when in training, near the time of his coming to post, his race must be done away with, and the owner will have to meet his losses accordingly.

But before I conclude on this subject, I shall (as my readers may expect) point out to them, very minutely, the frequent necessity there is, from accidents and other causes which take place, of physicking race-horses, and why the physic given to them is so much stronger than is generally given to horses in common use. I have already described the treatment by which a horse of the latter description might be recovered in case of injury to one of his fore legs; and, perhaps, as I have already observed, without the use of physic. But, in order to prove that the same treatment, without physic, would not effect the recovery of the leg of a race-horse in training, which may have met with a similar accident, let us take, by way of example, a very strong craving race-horse; I mean, such a horse which, if he

do not sweat three times a fortnight, will certainly have to sweat once in five or six days. Let us also suppose this horse to have fallen amiss in one of his four legs,—we will say, six weeks before the race; and as we would wish to bring him to post the day on which he is engaged, we will consider the injury which he may have received not to be of a very serious nature, but such as may have arisen from a blow he may have given himself on his leg with the opposite foot, perhaps in going along in his sweat, in changing his legs, or coming incautiously round a turn; or it may have occurred in the act of pulling up, if his boots should not be sufficiently thick to ward off a blow of this kind. The way by which the leg may have become injured is not very material; but I prefer representing an injury of this sort, as it is one which may soon be got the better of by proper management; yet it is of sufficient importance to shew the great necessity there is for administering physic to a race-horse under such circumstances.

A horse having received an injury of this kind, may not immediately go lame, nor may the leg immediately enlarge from it; perhaps not until the following morning. Now, it is the custom with a good training groom, in the morning, before he goes out with his horses to exercise, to examine the legs of such of them as may have sweat the day previous; and if he observe the leg of a horse out of shape, he immediately handles and examines it very minutely, and finds perhaps that there is a great deal of inflammation present, which to him is a

very unpleasant discovery; more particularly, with a craving horse, and one which may, perhaps, be heavily engaged. The first thing to be done with his horse, as with one in common use, is to stop his work; and such external application as may be thought best to answer the purpose of subsiding the inflammation, is applied to the leg by the groom; and with a view of assistance to relieve the inflammation, and to forward the cure with as little delay as possible, the groom also gives a strong dose of physic, for a mild one would not have much effect on such a horse, while he is at rest; but this will be more fully explained by and bye, when I treat of the physicking of race-horses generally. A veterinary surgeon would give a horse in common use a dose of physic, with a view also to assist in subsiding the inflammation of the leg; and if the horse be lusty, he would in all probability bleed him, which I think is a very good practice, and one which I have always followed; and, generally speaking, it is very similar to that which I believe every veterinary surgeon in private practice adheres to. But then the veterinary surgeon has only one object in view in physicking and bleeding his patient, which is that of relieving the inflammation in the local part; and should the horse in common use put up flesh during the time of his recovery, it may be considered (as I have already observed) rather as an advantage than otherwise. Now, the groom, in giving a dose of physic to a horse in training, with a bad leg, has the same object in view as the veterinary surgeon,—to relieve the inflam-

mation of the leg; but he has also another object in view, and it is one which he must not lose sight of—that of preventing a craving horse, when laying by, from getting too lusty; and the only chance he has of carrying his point, and bringing the horse to post on the day appointed, is, to give him plenty of physic to prevent his putting up flesh, and to keep him from getting fat in his inside, as well as to relieve the leg. From this treatment, the leg will in the course of a week or ten days have become cool and in shape, and the groom may then begin to think of bringing the leg very gradually to its former strength again. This he does by sending the horse to gentle walking exercise, on as level a piece of ground as can possibly be found for the purpose.

Now to prevent a similar accident from again taking place, I will just here remark, that when a horse has been laying by for some time, in consequence of an accident, he gets what is commonly termed in the stables, hearty and calfish, and on the first day or two of his coming out to exercise, he is generally inclined to begin his gambols, and bound about, and more particularly if he is taken immediately on the open downs. To prevent a thing of this sort from taking place, it may be advisable to take such precautions as will be likely to ensure safety, not only to the horse, but also to the boy. In the first place, the boy who may be put to ride the horse in his exercise, should be selected from among those who ride best; and in the second place, instead of the horse going to the open downs

to exercise, he should be taken into a well-fenced paddock; and it may be found needful on the first day of taking him into it, to buckle on a leading rein to the bit, and either the groom or head lad should lead the horse, with the boy riding him to the paddock. It may also be found requisite to lead such a horse round the paddock during the whole of the time he may be at exercise on the first day, and this should be continued for the first two, or perhaps three days, if it be observed that the horse is much inclined to play and spring about. After the horse comes to walk quietly, unless there can be, in all respects, the most implicit confidence placed in the boy who rides him, it would be advisable for the groom or head lad to remain in the paddock while the horse is at exercise, as boys are apt to be tricky. Now during the time that the horse is walking in the paddock, his leg, from this sort of exercise, is gaining strength; and at different opportunities when the horse is in the stable, stripped, and being brushed over, the groom, if he is a good judge, makes his observations on the state of the horse's condition. He, in a way peculiar to himself, not only looks him over very minutely, but handles and feels him over in every part where he is likely to put up flesh; and if he finds from the rest the horse has had, that he has gained a certain portion of flesh, the groom, being aware that the leg is in too delicate a state to put the horse immediately into strong work, considers the best thing to be done is to give him another dose of physic. Should this dose of physic not

lighten the horse of his flesh as much as the groom could wish or expect, it will conjointly with the walking exercise the horse has, certainly prevent him from getting into a more plethoric state, and the leg is every day continuing to get stronger. Three or four days after the second dose of physic has set, the groom begins to think of giving the horse a few short gentle gallops, daily, on as level a piece of ground as he can get for the purpose—that is, it should be even and flat, free from any rises or falls in any part of it. And care should be taken with a horse which may have had a bad leg, to bring him by degrees to his usual gallops, gradually increasing the length and pace, until the groom observes the horse's wind is good enough to enable him to go through a gentle sweat with tolerable ease to himself.

The next thing the groom has to consider is, the sort of boy he is to put up to ride the horse in his sweat. He should be one selected from among the best riding boys he has, and one that is in high practice in riding of sweats. Such a boy knows how to carry the groom's orders into execution, according to the state of the ground, or the condition the horse may be in. And as soon as the boy has got the horse well away, and settled to the pace, he sits quietly down in the saddle, and keeps a pretty fast hold of the horse's head; yet, at times, by giving and taking at gentle pulls, he takes care to keep the horse's mouth alive. This gives him the advantage of always having a pull over him, and which pull he takes whenever he sees

a necessity for it; and in this way he prevents the horse from breaking way, and thereby over-marking himself, which might occasion a fresh accident. But this sort of thing is not very likely to happen, if the boy that rides the horse be such a one as I have described. He well knows how to rate the horse at a fair and even pace throughout the whole of his sweat; and whether such a horse will have to sweat by himself, or should have another horse to come home with him, will depend on the sort of horse he is. But the manner of sweating different horses will be fully explained in the second part of this work, when we are on the subject of training race-horses.

As soon as the horse in question has been brought home to the stables after sweating, and as soon as he is dressed, and his legs are well fomented, the leg which we have described as being amiss, should have the cold lotion,* with the bandage applied to it. This application should be continued to the leg while the horse is in the stable, until the groom feels confident that the leg has completely recovered its former tone, which he may observe from its continuing perfectly cool and in shape.

But, when the horse is at exercise, the boot on the leg, if well padded, is, I think, preferable to the bandage, as it is better adapted to ward off

* Such as was commonly used by trainers on such occasions; as the crude sal ammoniac, and sugar of lead; of the former, four ounces, and of the latter, one ounce, dissolved in three pints of vinegar and one pint of water.

blows, and to prevent a similar accident from again occurring.

We have been some time on the subject of this bad leg, with a view to shew the necessity there is for administering physic for relief, and also to shew how necessary it is to give physic, to prevent so craving a horse as we have described from getting too lusty when laying by. But this physic has another advantage which has not yet been mentioned,—that of taking the staleness out of the horse, from the strong work he has for some time been doing; and it is precisely what the groom must have done with him, at or about the time I have made choice of, whether he had fallen amiss in his leg or not; and this is what is generally called the commencement of a second preparation, and is highly necessary at certain periods, in the training of race-horses which have been a long time in strong work. Now, had such a race-horse as we have alluded to, been allowed to lay by for the recovery of his leg, as a horse in common use may have been permitted to do, he would, without physic, have become so very lusty, as to put it quite out of the power of any training groom to have brought him to post, within the time I have mentioned. Were such a thing to be attempted, I suppose it would be done, by first giving the horse a dose of physic, and then putting him into strong and rapid work; but be this as it may, he never could be brought to post in such form as to enable him to compete with horses which may have been allowed a proper time to train.

Before I proceed further, it may be advisable for me to observe, that should a horse of strong constitution meet with an accident, and seriously strain or injure the tendons of his leg, he may as well be immediately put out of training, for it is more than a hundred to one, that a leg, thus injured, can ever be sufficiently recovered by any sort of means, so as to get such work into a strong-constitutioned horse, as to enable him to run with other race-horses.

I shall now proceed to treat of the physicking of race-horses more generally, commencing with those which are sound and in health. Such of them with strong constitutions, as may have become stale in themselves, and stale on their legs, or their legs being a little swollen from travelling and running during the summer, I shall not consider as being unhealthy. Others which I shall have occasion to mention, as young ones and light ones, will require but little physic; the former will not become stale until they have been some time in training, although their constitutions may be strong; and the latter are still less subject to this sort of thing, in consequence of their not being able to stand such work as would occasion it.

With the approach of autumn, the racing season concludes. Some meetings, however, in different parts of the country, are over much earlier than others; and when race-horses are supposed to have done running for the season, and have returned to their home stables to winter, such of them as may be allowed by their owners to remain under the care of public training

grooms, are put, as it is termed, into physic. To bring this point,—the physicking of race-horses generally,—before my readers as clearly as I possibly can, I shall commence with the physicking of such horses as may be standing at home, public racing stables—say for example, at Newmarket, for there, either with young ones or old ones, training may be said to be always going on. The meetings at Newmarket conclude the latter end of October, which is, perhaps, too late in the season to get green meat for the horses, in such perfection as is requisite to assist in refreshing them. Therefore to refresh some horses, and to lighten others, the grooms begin in the month of November, to prepare them for their physic; and their custom was, with such horses as had been running and travelling the whole of the summer, to give each of them on his return to the home stable, three doses physic, with an interval of eight or ten days between each dose; and in the spring, prior to their going into training (depending on how early their engagements may take place,) three doses more were given them, with the same interval of time between each, and this was termed putting the horses through their different courses of physic. The first course was to take the staleness out of them, and bring their legs in shape, which it did most effectually. The second course in the spring, was to carry off the humours and to assist in lightening the horses before they were put into training. But I hope by this time, that some of the training grooms, if not all of them, have seen the im-

propriety of repeating dose after dose in this way; if they have not, I will endeavour to point out to them by and bye, when on the subject of training, how physic may be administered in both instances much more to the advantage of the horses.

The preparing of race-horses for their physic in the autumn, may be done in much the same manner as with horses in common use; as more time may be allowed for those horses of strong constitutions to be kept on mashes, than when they are in training. Three or four mashes a day, of equal parts of bran and oats, for a couple of days, will relax their bowels, and thereby facilitate the action of the medicine on them; and a less portion of aloes in their physic than is generally given to them when in regular training, will answer the purpose of purging them equally well. It was formerly a rule with grooms, and it may, I have no doubt, be much practised by many at present, whenever they were going to physic several horses on the same day, to give the whole of them their physic early in the morning. With strong constitutioned horses this may be very proper; for in the common way of preparing those horses, the medicine seldom operates until the following morning; that is, it generally remains in the bowels of those strong horses for four-and-twenty hours before it begins to purge them. But with others, which may be more delicate, it will be seen to operate in the course of eight, ten, or twelve hours.

As we are not in so great a hurry for the medicine to act now, as we should be were the horses in train-

ing, or were they labouring under disease, we prefer giving them their physic at different times, with a view to have them all purging on the following morning when at exercise. In endeavouring to accomplish this, the groom must bear in mind, when he is about giving physic to a number of horses on the same day, (say fifteen or twenty for example), that the constitutions of so many horses will vary, more or less; consequently, he must vary the quantity of aloes in each dose, according to the age, constitution, and condition of each horse; but he must also regulate the time of day that different horses should have their physic given them after they come in from exercise in the morning. Those of craving constitutions may have their physic given them immediately after they come in, at seven or eight o'clock in the morning. Those with constitutions not quite so strong, may have theirs given them at twelve o'clock in the day; and those which may be still more delicate (if it be determined to physic them), may have theirs given them at four or six o'clock in the evening; and by this method they may be got to purge pretty nearly at one time, which is an object worth attending to, as the groom can more readily judge how each dose of physic operates on each horse, in proportion to the quantity of aloes given.

Such horses as are known to the groom to be shy drinkers in physic, must be watered sparingly at twelve o'clock, the day before the physic is given, instead of at four or six in the evening. From this treatment they are most of them inclined to drink

pretty freely on the following day; and on the night previous to giving them their physic in the morning, it would be advisable to keep them short of hay, more particularly the craving ones. Instead of giving them their usual allowance, let them have half the quantity; and those which may be inclined to eat their litter may have the setting muzzles put on, when the boys go into the stables to go to bed. Let those that do this be set as sharp as they would be for their sweat or race. The groom, on first opening the stables in the morning on the day the physic is to be given, should give each of the horses a small portion of mash, before they go out to exercise, and when the horses return to the stables again, the craving ones, after their heads are dressed, before they are turned round in the stall, may have their physic given them; and the other light horses, at the different periods which I have already directed. All the horses, after having their physic, remain in the stables for the day, and the usual stable hours are kept, at which times they have their warm water given them, and they are afterwards stripped and brushed over, their clothes again put on, and their legs rubbed. Their mashes are given them, with small portions of hay, and they are shut up. Horses in physic, particularly those which may be a little sick, should be fed sparingly. When it is observed they are not inclined to eat their mashes, they should be taken from them; if they do not seem inclined to eat their hay, they may have a little clean sweet straw given them, to pick and pull

about, and amuse themselves with; many of them will eat it, when in physic, in preference to any thing else.

On opening the stables in the morning, the day the physic is to be worked off, as soon as the boys have set the beds fair, and brought them sufficiently back for the horses to purge on, each boy may then put two or three plats in the horse's tail, and tie it round at the bottom, to prevent it from becoming soiled whenever the horse purges. The whole of the horses should now have their warm water, each being allowed to drink as much as he likes; after which, they should be brushed over and got ready for exercise. They are to be comfortably clothed, according to the season of the year. In the autumn or spring, they should have good full-sized blanket-sort of rugs next to their skin, with a sheet and quarter piece on top; if there is much wind out, a breast sweater may be put on, to keep their clothes down in front, and their quarter strings should also be put on, to keep them from blowing up behind; or, what perhaps is to be preferred, is a piece of binding attached to the hinder part of the sheet or quarter piece, so arranged as to form a sort of crupper, to go under the horse's tail. The bridle and the hood should be put on each horse as he is standing in the stall, with his head to the rack. If a horse is brought round in the usual way, for the purpose of having those things put on, he may purge in the manger if his physic has begun to work. Each boy should be made to back his horse out of the stall, when he is going out to exercise.

Now, as exercise greatly assists the action of medicine, the groom should not only regulate the time each horse is to remain at exercise, but also how often each horse should come out on the day the physic is working off. Those which the groom observes to purge freely, may not be out more than once, or twice at farthest, the first thing in the morning, and at four o'clock in the afternoon. But others, which may be thought not to purge sufficiently, and which may be rather lusty, may come out to exercise three times in the day—the first thing in the morning, at eleven or twelve o'clock in the day, and at four in the afternoon. Any of them that may require to be out for longer periods than others may be sent out half an hour or an hour earlier than the rest, so that they may all come in together, to admit of the whole of the stables being shut up at the same time. But on their first coming into the stables from exercise, it is necessary again to take the precaution with them, in regard to not bringing them round in the stalls to have their heads dressed. Each boy should ride his horse into the stall, dismount, take off his hood and bridle, wisp and wipe his horse's head, sponge his nostrils, and with a rubber wipe them dry, then put on his collar, and chain up his head.

I have known some grooms, who would not have their horse's feet washed, or even have them dressed on the day of their physic working off. All they would allow to be done, would be to have their clothes put straight, their quarters cleaned, and their legs well rubbed. I must confess I was rather particular in

this respect myself, when I was a groom. But since I have practised as a veterinary surgeon, I have physicked horses in various ways, and under such a variety of circumstances, that I am quite confident there is no danger to be apprehended from either washing their feet, or stripping them to be dressed. In the stables they are to be kept comfortably clothed, with blankets next their skin. The top clothing, which is put on them in physic, and also for them to sleep in, should be the old ones, which are fit for no other purpose. After their feet are washed, and before the boys strip them, such of them as may not have purged briskly, or drank freely before they went out, may be tried again, now they are in, with a little warm water, and then let the whole of them be dressed, and their legs be well rubbed; and after the stables are set fair, give them their mashes and hay, strip their quarters, shut them up, and let the boys get their breakfasts. The groom, on coming into the stables at noon time, is to make his observations on such of the horses as may have purged repeatedly in the stables. Such of them as may have been affected in this way, should remain in until four o'clock in the afternoon; and those which may not have purged much in the stables, should be watered and sent out to exercise, with a view to get the medicine to act sufficiently. When they come in at twelve or one o'clock, they are to be treated as in the morning; and those which may have to stop in at this noon period, should be watered, their quarters cleaned, wisped over, clothed up, their

manes combed, and their legs rubbed. They are to be fed as in the morning, on mashes and a small portion of hay, and then shut up. The groom, on coming into the stables at four o'clock in the afternoon, is again to make his observations how each horse may have purged in the stables; and such of them as he may observe to have purged briskly throughout the whole of the day, he will order to be left in, and those which have purged moderately, he will order out to exercise with those others which were out in the middle of the day; and on their coming into the stables, they will be treated in every respect as they were at noon time. But the mashes and warm water should be discontinued to those horses which I have directed to be left in, in consequence of their physic having purged very briskly, most likely from its having been given too strong. Warm thick gruel, in small quantities, should be given to them, instead of their mashes; they may also have a little dry bran and oats, mixed in equal parts. Their beds being set fair, their heads should be let down so as to reach the manger, and those horses which may not have been so much purged, should have their mashes given them. The stables may then be shut up until eight o'clock, at which stable hour, the horses that have been purging briskly the whole of the day, may again be tried with a little more thick gruel, and if the groom thinks they will eat a little dry corn, he may give them a dish-full. The beds being again set fair, the whole of the horses' heads let down, their quarters

stripped (the boys being ready to go to bed, having previously got their suppers), the stables may now be shut up for the night, which will most likely be about nine o'clock. On the following morning, when the groom comes to the stables, he expects to find each horse's physic set; in other words, to have stopped working. Such of the light horses as may not have purged much the day before, and such others as may have stopped purging in the night, may, the first thing in the morning, have a dish-full of corn given them, which they will eat whilst the stables are setting fair; they may then be got ready to go out on the downs. But if the weather is cold, windy, or uncertain as to rain, they may be walked in the paddock at the back of the stables for an hour or so, merely to give them an appetite. When they return to the stables, they are to be fed and treated in all respects as they were prior to their going into physic. But those horses which we have already made mention of as having been briskly purged the day before, and which have not quite stopped purging the next morning, are to remain in the stables the whole of the day. They should be fed on dry food, and have some thick gruel given them to drink at the different stable hours; and on the following morning, their physic being set, they may be taken out as the other horses were the day before.

I have, in the early part of this chapter, made mention of the necessity there would be for giving physic to a horse in training, that may have met with an

accident, and injured one of his legs, which injury may occasion such horse to be laid by for its recovery. I have also spoke of the manner in which race-horses in two different states of condition were physicked by grooms in the autumn; the first, being light and stale; the last-mentioned, young, fresh, and lusty. But as at this season of the year, plenty of time can be allowed them to be on mashes, so as sufficiently to relax their bowels, a less quantity of aloes will answer the purpose of purging them. There is, therefore, not much difficulty or danger to be apprehended in physicking these horses. Those which I have made mention of as being stale ones, should be put into large loose places; the young ones should be taken into the training stables: and in a future chapter I shall state the manner in which they are repeatedly to be treated during the winter.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON PHYSIC.

In the last chapter I treated on the physicking of race-horses not in training; or rather, of those which, from various causes, may have been put out of training for a short time. In this, I propose to show how some of them are to be physicked, and for what purposes, when they are in regular training. But before I enter fully on this subject, it may be proper, in order to prevent errors, to make some few observations on the effects of aloes on the constitution of the race-horse, under certain circumstances. When I first went to live as a boy in the stables, I remember great mistakes to have been made by grooms, both in the internal and external applications of medicines; and I confess that when I became a groom myself, I fell into similar errors. Nor was it much to be wondered at, for grooms, generally speaking, were very little acquainted with the properties of medicine, not even of the few they made use of for the horses under their care. They

were in this respect principally guided by the recipes of their forefathers. I have known them give aloes in very large portions to horses in training, and at times, without paying due attention to their constitutions, or to the state in which their bodies were at the time; and from these circumstances, a valuable horse has now and then died in physic; and this is an error to which grooms have too frequently been liable. The aloes which were formerly made use of by grooms, were principally the succotrine; but for horses they are uncertain in their effect, and are seldom to be depended on, unless with delicate horses, or when given in very large quantities.

The Barbadoes aloes, being stronger than any others, are of course more active, and although given in a less quantity, they are more certain in their operation. If these aloes are given in proper quantities, according to the age, constitution, and condition of the horse, there is no danger to be apprehended from their use. Indeed, as far as my experience has gone, I think the Barbadoes far the best for all descriptions of horses, but more particularly for race-horses, which are at all times very difficult to be purged. It is by giving powerful physic that horses are much debilitated, and thrown back in their condition. I remember an instance of a large quantity of aloes being given to a three-year old colt, which I looked after myself. The groom I was living under at that time could neither read nor write; nor could any boy in the stable except myself. Stable boys, at the period I am

alluding to, could not boast much of their education, nor had I much to speak of in this way myself. I could read and write, and knew some little of figures. The groom, poor man, was so unfortunate as not to know any thing of either the one or the other, so that, to prevent mistakes, it was a rule with him, whenever he was going to physic any of his horses, to bring his recipes to me to read, which I did. As well as reading his recipes, I kept his accounts and wrote his letters, and read those he received; in short, I may be said to have been the groom's private secretary, and in that capacity, I had the good fortune to enjoy his most unrestricted confidence. But to return. The dose of physic which was made up for the colt just alluded to, contained twelve drachms of aloes; and, at that time, it was an invariable custom with grooms to add a variety of other ingredients in the making up of their physic. By these additions, a ball became so large, that it could not be given at once; the mass was therefore divided into two, and sometimes three balls. The three-year-old which had this dose of physic given him, I remember was purged to great excess, and he was several days before he recovered from the effects of it. I was not very capable of judging of the constitutions of horses at the time, but I expect he must have had a pretty strong constitution, or such a dose of physic would have killed him.

By way of caution to grooms, and with a view to prevent them in future from falling into similar errors, I will here state different causes from which I have

known horses occasionally die in physic. I have already observed that there are some horses much more easily purged than others; but the horse which now and then leads the groom astray, is the one of a craving constitution. A groom generally judges of the constitution of a horse from the size of his carcass, and width of his loins, as also from the manner in which he feeds, and from the work he takes in training. From these points, he will be able to form a tolerably just idea. When a groom was about physicking a strong, craving, large carcassed horse, his practice was thence to regulate the quantity of aloes the dose was to contain, which, on such occasions, would most likely be from nine to ten drachms of Barbadoes aloes; and it has frequently happened, that a dose of physic of this strength has had no effect whatever in purging a horse of a strong constitution, when in training. If such a dose of physic had been given to a horse in common use, it would have more than purged him sufficiently: it would, in all probability, have purged him to death. It also occurs at times, that a horse in training is purged for too long a period, or perhaps till he dies, and from the following cause. The groom having given him a dose of physic, such as I have described, and finding it to have produced little or no effect on the horse after a proper interval of time, considers it necessary to give the horse another dose; and in making up this second dose, he concludes it will be necessary to add a larger portion of aloes, perhaps two or three dracnms more than was

contained in the first. Nor is this a very unreasonable conclusion for a man to make who is unacquainted with the properties of medicine. It is in consequence of this treatment, that a groom has now and then been so unfortunate as to have a horse die in physic, which arises from his ignorance of the effect of the aloes on the constitution, when the quantity is increased beyond that which is generally given at one time, to purge such a horse. When the aloes, being increased to the extent above mentioned, begin to operate, the action is sometimes continued in proportion to the quantity given, and by stimulating so large a surface as that of the intestines of the horse for so great a length of time, and to such excess, the powers and constitution are not able to support it. The general consequence is, great debility and irritation, sometimes followed by inflammation of the bowels, which occasions the death of the horse. This has at times occurred to some grooms, from their having relied too much on the power of medicine alone, to purge a strong horse, and merely preparing him for his physic in the usual way, by giving him mashes the day previous, with a view to relax the bowels, and then the first thing on the following morning administering the whole of the dose at once, mixing therein a very large portion of aloes, for the reason and under the impression which I have already pointed out. Now, the common method of preparing the horse, and giving the physic, would be very proper to one which may be easily purged, and which required but a moderate portion of aloes to pro-

duce the effect. But to administer physic sufficiently powerful to operate on a horse in training prepared in this way, and which horse it may be difficult to purge, is rather a dangerous experiment. Nor is it done but by those grooms who are not unacquainted with the advantages to be derived, either by giving the physic, or by preparing the horse differently. If the horse be prepared, and the physic be given in the way I shall, by and bye, have occasion to explain, a less quantity of aloes than is usually given, will purge a strong horse sufficiently well, and less danger will thereby be incurred.

Another course of treatment which has at times occasioned the death of a horse by physic, is, when a groom has given a dose which may have remained in the bowels of a horse for a couple, or perhaps even three days, without producing any effect whatever (and this is not at all an extraordinary occurrence) : the groom considers, from the period which has elapsed, and the physic not having worked, that it was much too weak, and finding that it has not operated on the third day, he gives another dose, with an additional portion of aloes in it ; and I have known it happen that in the course of an hour or two after the second dose has been given, the first has begun to operate ; the consequence of which has been, the effect of the second dose has been to continue the operation of purging until the horse has died.

Whenever a dose of physic has been given to a horse, without producing the desired effect at the

usual time, or which indeed may not have purged him at all, but may have passed off, as it sometimes will do, by urine,—under either of these circumstances, it would be advisable not to repeat a second dose until after the lapse of seven or eight days.

Horses in high condition, and hearty feeders, are consequently much accustomed to be physicked ; and in the preparing of such horses, should they only have a mash or two given them in the evening, and should they at night be allowed their usual quantity of hay, and not be taken out to exercise in the morning before the physic is given, (which I have known repeatedly to be the case) it will seldom be found practicable to succeed in purging them by the proper time. The quantity of food not only retards the operation of the medicine, for two or three days, but it is very often the cause of the physic not producing any effect whatever. These are the causes which have led grooms into error, supposing the physic not to be sufficiently strong to purge the horse ; and from such supposition, they adopt the practice of giving very large portions of aloes. I have known ten, and sometimes twelve drachms of Barbadoes aloes given at one time, and when the succotrine aloes have been given, twelve and fourteen drachms have commonly been the dose. There is no occasion for giving, at any one time, so large a quantity of either of these aloes, to any horse in training. It is not only attended with considerable danger, but by physicking horses in this manner, they often purge to great excess, which very much debili-

tates them, and they are a long time before they recover their former strength and vigour.

Notwithstanding these occasional results, it has always been the custom with training grooms, as long as I can remember, to physic their own horses, or rather, those which are sent to them by different noblemen and gentlemen of the turf to be trained; for, to discover the proper course of treatment would puzzle most men who may be in very high practice in the physicking of horses in common use, and who may physic such horses very properly; yet, if these same men have not been in the habit of physicking race-horses, and have not at any times lived in racing stables, so as to have observed the different methods of preparing horses there for their physic; such men would find it extremely difficult to purge strong horses when in training; that is, if they were to pay the same attention that a training groom would, not to impair the constitution of a strong horse when in training, by feeding him too freely on mashes, which would cause him to be relaxed. For this is a soft sort of food, and not sufficiently nutritious to feed a horse on for two or three days, until his bowels have become sufficiently relaxed, so as to admit of a less portion of aloes being given to work him, without his going back in his condition. This plan will not be found to answer with such a horse, unless it is intended that he should lay by for six weeks or two months. The treatment for refreshing a horse under such circumstances is very different, and will be fully explained in its proper place.

I will now proceed with my observations on physicking of race-horses that may have been in regular training for two or three seasons; and for the purpose of clearly elucidating this matter, the horses I shall first make choice of, shall be those of pretty strong constitutions; I mean, such horses as are generally selected for country running, and that are in high training at the time there may be occasion to physic them—say, for example, in the month of July, or August; for, at this time, their bodies have become much changed from the state of condition which they are in, compared with that state in which some of them were when physicked in the autumn or spring. The constitutions of such horses have become well braced, from the high feeding and strong exercise they have had; and their intestines have also been so much accustomed to the stimulus of aloes, that it makes it extremely difficult to purge them when it becomes necessary to do so, for the purpose of refreshing them.

It is to be observed, that country-plate horses have to come to post much more frequently than those which are younger, and which are generally kept in reserve by their owners, for the various great stakes which are run for at Newmarket, York, Doncaster, or Epsom. Those horses engaged in country running, may be said, during the summer, to be travelling a sort of circuit. They are contending for His Majesty's, and the various country and town plates, which are given at the different racing meetings. As they are

generally horses of strong constitutions, they require to be kept in pretty strong work, and that, together with their running and travelling, causes many of them, as the season advances, to become more or less stale in their condition, and also stale and round on their legs, notwithstanding the great care and attention which is paid to them. These horses are more liable to be amiss in this respect, when they are the property of country trainers, than when in the possession of noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, who have their different motives for keeping them; some as a part of their establishment, and to preserve a good breed of horses in the country, (their ancestors having done so before them); those who are fond of racing, for the pleasure and amusement they afford; and some few others, who, after having had a tolerable share of experience, may, with good fortune, get money by them. This last object is pursued by the country trainer, as his circumstances seldom admit of his keeping a race-horse merely for pleasure. This man makes racing his profession; and if, by purchase, he should come into possession of a tolerably good country plate horse, he calculates the price he may have given for him, and the expense incurred in his training, and for these, the owner becomes anxious to be remunerated. His object is to win with him all he can; he therefore enters his horse at the different meetings he frequents, whenever he thinks there is a chance of his going up to the head and winning; and it is in this way, from repeated running and travelling, that the horse some-

times gets abused, that is, he becomes stale, and below his mark. He appears jaded in himself, and if brought out in this state to post, he will be seen, when running, to go stiff and short in his stride. It requires a jockey to be almost constantly persevering with such a horse; and however severely he may get at him in the running, he cannot succeed in making him run in the same form as when fresh. The manner of refreshing such horses in training as may have become stale from the above causes must vary according to circumstances. When there can be plenty of time allowed for the purpose, the most effectual way of doing it is by laying them by in loose places, giving them rest, with green meat and physic. Any that may be thus treated, which are standing in stalls, will require gentle exercise to keep them in health. Now, to refresh a horse effectually by these means (green meat, physic, and rest), which are certainly the best for his constitution, would take a month or six weeks, which is more time than can be allowed for a country plate horse to lay by in the summer; as, during such a period, he would miss running perhaps at two or three of the principal meetings, a thing which the trainer wishes to avoid. Therefore, to refresh his horse with as little delay as possible, he must almost solely rely on the use of physic. If it should happen on the circuit which a horse may be travelling, that the meetings follow each other so quick in succession as not to allow of sufficient time to administer physic to him, so as afterwards to recover from its effects, the

better way will be for the groom to decline running for a single meeting; and if he makes his mind up to this, the sooner he travels off with his horse the better, to the place where the meeting may be held at which he intends his horse to run. That is the proper place to refresh the horse; and the best loose stable that can be had there should be prepared for him, if not on the ground, as near to it as possible. Now, after the horse arrives at his destination,—whether the groom will give him a gentle sweat, with a view to keep the length in him, and immediately afterwards give him a dose of physic,—or whether the sweat will be dispensed with, and a couple of doses of physic be administered, and the horse afterwards got ready, (which would, in fact, be a brief sort of second preparation),—must depend entirely on the time allowed, and the horse's work must of course be stopped for a certain period; but this matter will be more fully explained when I am on the subject of training, and travelling country plate horses.

I shall now proceed to point out the different ways of preparing the bodies of strong constitutioned horses, prior to giving them physic. I shall also speak of the effects of the medicine on their constitutions; and by what means such horses become refreshed from its use; and although I may recommend strong physic to be given to some few of them, yet I beg leave to observe, that I am by no means an advocate for giving strong physic generally. Nor do I approve of the practice of giving dose after dose to some lusty horses before

they have been put into training, and with only the interval of a week or eight days between each dose; which was much the custom with grooms when I was first in the stables. When craving horses are become stale, from the causes already mentioned, and when sufficient time cannot be allowed to refresh them by long rest, it becomes necessary to attain this point by the use of physic alone; and then it becomes necessary not only to purge such horses, but to purge them briskly; that is, the medicine beginning to operate early in the morning, should, with the aid of exercise, continue to purge them freely, at intervals, until the shutting up of the stables the last thing at night, when it should shew some appearance of setting, and it should be perfectly set on the following morning. Nor must the groom be disappointed, if it can possibly be avoided, as to the time of its operating: his being disappointed in this respect would most likely be a loss of time; I mean, it would prevent his bringing his horse well to post at the meeting he intended.

Now, when a groom is going to physic any given number of his horses, he must, as I have already noticed, regulate the quantity of aloes he intends giving in each dose, according to the strength of the constitutions of different horses; for although they may all be what is generally termed strong craving horses, yet there will be some variation in this respect. It is therefore more difficult to get the medicine to act on some than on others; but, in regard to this matter, the groom must be guided by the observations he may

have made on the working and feeding of his horses, and according to the difficulty he anticipates in the purging of one horse more than in the purging of another; so will he make his arrangements in preparing each horse for his physic.

On the day previous to giving them their physic, it is necessary, with a view, in some measure, to relax their bowels, that they should be kept during the day on mashes, with a small quantity of hay; and at night they should be sparingly fed with it. Let them have half of their usual quantity: some would be much better without any hay; and such of them as are much inclined to eat their bedding, should have their setting muzzles put on them. On the following morning each horse should have a double-handful of mash given him; and after each has eaten this portion, they should be got ready and taken out to walking exercise, for a couple or three hours. By taking these precautions—preparing them with a mash or two the evening before, and keeping them over night short of hay—the next morning while at exercise, they empty themselves, and their bowels become relaxed; and when they return to the stables, their physic should be immediately given them; and the following morning, it is more than probable, the whole of them will be found to purge in due time, with a less quantity of aloes than was generally given to such horses. The groom may add half a drachm or even a drachm of aloes to the quantity to be given to such horse as he is of opinion may be more difficult to purge than the rest; and he may keep him

out a little longer than usual at walking exercise, so that he may be more empty when he comes in; and instead of giving him the whole dose of physic at one time, let the ball be divided;—give one half immediately on his coming into the stable, and the other half at six o'clock in the evening. This method of giving the physic, with the strength of it a little increased will be found to answer the purpose of purging almost any horse. The quantity of Barbadoes aloes used in each dose of physic for craving horses, prepared as I have here directed, should average from five to seven drachms. It was usual to give ten drachms to these horses, and the same portion was sometimes given to lusty craving colts; but there is risk in giving this quantity to horses thus prepared. When a groom has not a thorough knowledge of a horse's constitution, it would be advisable for him first to make trial of one or the other of the first mentioned portions of aloes, in preference to administering either of the two last, to a horse which he may not have physicked before. There is another method practised by training grooms in the purging of their horses, with a view not only to get the medicine to operate on horses difficult to purge, but also with a view to lighten them of their superfluous flesh; and as it was one by which they almost invariably succeeded, I have no doubt that many occasionally adhere to this old practice, when they find horses putting up flesh so very rapidly as some of them will do notwithstanding the strong work which is generally given them.

A groom, finding it difficult, by the means generally adopted, to keep such a horse in proper form, to come a long length at a racing pace, gives him a dose of physic on the morning he sweats, in order to lighten him of his flesh, as well as to take the staleness out of him which the work has occasioned.

It is customary over night or very early in the morning, to set this sort of horse for his sweat, and in the morning he is clothed up, and goes over the sweating ground, for the length and at the pace the groom directs. The horse, after being pulled up, is brought in and turned round in the stall, and the customary portion of clothing is then thrown on him, which occasions the horse to discharge most profusely through the pores of his skin for ten minutes, or a quarter of an hour. He is afterwards scraped, dressed, and clothed up, by which time, his respiration and pulse have become tranquil. His physic is now given him, and he is then sent out to take the usual gallop, which it is customary for horses to take after sweating. This gallop, I shall by and bye endeavour to prove, may, in some instances, be advantageously dispensed with. The horse, after taking his gallop, is brought into the stable, is well dressed, comfortably clothed, and treated as is usual on such occasions; but from the length of time he has been set, and from the profuse manner in which he has been sweated, he is very anxious for his food and water, both of which are given him as directed by the groom; but as he is generally inclined to take more freely of the latter than the former, it

promotes the operation of the medicine; and a light dose of physic, of six or seven drachms, given to a horse thus prepared, seldom or ever fails in purging him freely the following morning, when he may be walked out, and treated as circumstances may require. Now, although this method of physicking horses may appear to many of my readers as rather resorting to strong measures to get the medicine to act; yet, if the physic is not given too strong, no danger is to be apprehended. But notwithstanding this, there is an objection to this mode of physicking a horse; for by producing two such formidable evacuations, immediately following each other, I have known them carried to such an extent, as now and then materially to affect the constitution. It is true the groom has obtained his point. By setting, sweating, and physicking, he has brought the horse very light; but from such treatment, (more particularly should the physic have been given a little too strong), a horse becomes too much debilitated; and were not such horses hearty feeders, they would be a long time recovering their former strength: I should therefore recommend grooms not to have recourse to this mode of physicking horses oftener than they can possibly avoid.

Having thus spoken of the necessity there is of giving physic to craving strong horses, I shall now proceed to point out the advantages obtained from the effects it produces on the constitutions of such horses.

A horse of the above description may have a dose of physic given him a short period before he runs; it

may be given in place of his sweat. If it appears that he has become stale, from the work he has been doing, only observe to let him have the brushing gallop, usual on the morning previous to his sweat; and if the time be judiciously chosen by the groom who trains him, the horse will derive great benefit from the operation of it; for, from the stimulating effects of the physic in promoting the various secretions of the stomach, intestines, and the different glands of the body, and from its also increasing, by the aid of exercise, the peristaltic motion of the bowels, the whole mass of those fluids become so rapidly removed by evacuation, as to cause very considerable absorption to take place throughout the whole system. From this circumstance, some little debility will, of course, arise; but, as the horse is of a strong constitution, and is invariably a good feeder, he soon recovers from the weakness resulting from the operation of the medicine. His general habit of body, as well as his legs, will have become much cooled and refreshed; indeed, it will be perceived very shortly after the physic has begun to work, that the horse's legs become clean, cool, and in shape; and, to a certain extent, he is, both inside and out, lightened of his flesh. In those two instances, the physic will, with the exception of two points—length and wind,—have produced the same advantages as a sweat would have done; and if the horse is afterwards allowed a sufficient time to be at walking exercise, merely for him to recover his appetite, he soon becomes invigorated. The change produced on the

horse's constitution from the effects of the medicine, will have improved him in a most extraordinary way. This will, in a very short time, be perceptible in his fresh and hearty appearance when at exercise. If the groom do but regulate the horse's work properly, during the interval of time between the setting of the physic and the day the horse has to run, there is no doubt but that he will come to post in good form.

Having offered such observations on the preparing of strong horses for their physic, and having also made such precautionary remarks as to the quantity of aloes to be administered to such horses, as I hope may, in future, prevent grooms from falling into errors, I shall now proceed to give directions on the physicking of horses of a more delicate constitution. I allude to such of them as have more speed, are more lengthy, and are lighter in their carcasses. They generally run short distances, require less work in training, and are therefore much sooner got ready to run than craving horses. Consequently, these light horses are not so liable to become stale, either in their condition, or on their legs; and to a certain extent, many such horses would be much better without physic. This being the case, it is necessary that I should make some distinction between those which may at times require physic, and those which may not require it; and this distinction I shall make, by dividing them into three classes. The class of which I intend now to treat, may be called the second class. I should term them (to use the language of the groom) light-hearted horses.

This term is applied to such of them as are generally hearty and playsome when out at exercise; and as far as regards their constitutions, they are horses which may be considered to be in the medium between the very craving horse and the light one. This middle class of horses certainly require to have physic given them, but they do not require it so strong, nor so repeatedly, as the first class of horses do, which have been the principal subject of consideration in this chapter. This second class of horses may be prepared for their physic much the same as horses in common use, by giving them two or three mashes the day previous, and at night, keeping them short of hay.

The quantity of aloes necessary to produce the desired effect of purging these horses will certainly never require to be increased beyond five or six drachms. The same directions may be followed for their treatment during the time that their physic is working off, as is recommended for such horses in the preceding chapter.

I now proceed to the third class. These are horses to which various terms are applied by grooms, to express the delicacy of their constitutions, dispositions, or tempers. Some of them are termed "light and weedy," meaning that they are lengthy and light in their carcasses; some of them are termed "nervous;" others, "irritable;" and some again are called "flighty." These terms are certainly very applicable to many of this class of horses. But it is to be supposed, that our breed of race-horses has been much improved within these last twenty years, as to strength of constitution, or at least, that this ought to have been the

case, therefore there may not be quite so many of these delicate horses in training now as formerly; yet as there may be a few of them now and then put in training, it is necessary that I should make a few remarks on the physicking of such horses. As they are invariably very delicate horses, they are seldom or ever engaged to run but in short races, consequently they require but little work in training; and as there is not much waste or spare to come off them, they are generally better without either sweating or physicking. Grooms were formerly very much inclined to physic all descriptions of horses placed under their care; and I myself was much addicted to this practice when a groom. If grooms are still inclined to purge horses of this description, I should advise its being done by giving the horse small portions of aloes—say a drachm morning and evening. A delicate horse will seldom take more than three or four drachms at most, before his bowels will have become affected. The medicine should then be discontinued. There will be no necessity for giving mashes to a horse, by way of preparing him previously to administering small balls of aloes; and during the period of his taking them, he may go to exercise every day. This will assist the action of the medicine, which may, in that case, be given in a less quantity. This is an advantage; for the less medicine such horses take, the better, provided they are in health. When any groom is desirous of giving a second or third course of these balls, he should observe, that the same time should be allowed to the horse to recover

from a course of them, as from a moderate dose of physic. But I cannot refrain from again remarking, that such horses, unless labouring under disease, would be far better without being purged. I have here noticed the classing of horses, only with regard to their constitutions, and how physic may be expected to operate on each horse, according to the quantity of aloes given. The classification of horses in their work, will depend on the age, shape, and make of each horse, individually; for it is the structure of animals which principally constitutes their physical powers; and it is from the different points, such as the length, the depth, and breadth of certain parts of a race-horse, that a training groom is guided in his opinion, with regard to the speed or stoutness of the different horses he is beginning to train, and which particular points in race-horses, I can better describe when I am on the subject of training.

I hope it will be considered by my readers, that I have been sufficiently explicit, as to the general practice of physicking race-horses, according as their different constitutions may vary. But as to all the various precise periods of giving physic to different horses when in training, or at other times *on the road when travelling*, this part of the subject will be fully explained in its proper place.

I shall here give a list of medicines; and a table of the weights and measures used in the compounding of them. I shall also mention such apparatus as are necessary thereto; as well as such other things as may

be requisite for administering or applying them. The whole of these different medicines, and the other articles, are to be kept in the groom's private saddle-room.

MEDICINES.

Aloes, Barbadoes	Resin
Alum	Sal ammoniac
Arrow Root	Spanish flies
Basillicon, yellow	Sweet Spirit of Nitre
Camphor	Spirit of Turpentine
Castile Soap	Spirit of Wine
Ginger Powder	Salt, common
Goulard's Extract	Soft Soap
Honey	Tar, Barbadoes
Hog's Lard	Tartar Emetic
Linseed Meal	Tincture of Myrrh
Nitre	Treacle
Oil of Carraway	Venus Turpentine
Oil, Castor	Vinegar
Oil of Cloves	Vitriol, Blue
Oil of Olives	Vitriol, White
Oil of Origanum	Verdigris
Oil of Rosemary	Wax
Prepared Ammonia	White Lead.

APOTHECARIES WEIGHT.

Twenty Grains—One Scruple	Three Scruples—One Drachm
Eight Drachms—One Ounce	Twelve Ounces—One Pound

MEASURE OF FLUIDS.

Sixty Drops	One Fluid Dram
Eight Fluid Drams	One Fluid Ounce
Four Fluid Ounces	A Measure or Noggin
Sixteen Fluid Ounces	One Fluid Pint
Eight Fluid Pints	One Gallon.

APPARATUS FOR COMPOUNDING MEDICINES.

A Box of small WEIGHTS and SCALES,

For the weighing of Medicines in small portions, as from a grain to two drachms. The weights marked with English characters.

One Pair of Two-ounce Scales—One pair of Pound Scales—One Pound of Brass Box Weights.

A GRADUATED GLASS,

For the measure of Fluids—marked with English characters.

One Large and one Small Pestle and Mortar.
One Marble Slab, a foot and a half square, for mixing Ointments.
One Large and one Small Ladle.
One Large and one Small Pallet Knife.

ARTICLES NECESSARY TO BE KEPT FOR ADMINISTERING AND APPLYING MEDICINES.

Improved Ball Iron.
Drenching Horn.
Flannel for the applying of Fomentations and Poultices.
Woollen and Linen Bandages.
Tow, and broad coarse Tape.

A Cradle is sometimes wanted to be put on a horse's neck, when his head is first let down after being blistered, more particularly if the horse is turned into a loose box.

INSTRUMENTS.

Fleam and Blood Stick.
Tooth Rasp, with a Guard.
Seaton, and Curved Needles.
Abscess Lancet.
Improved Docking Machine.
Firing, Searing, and Budding Irons.
Improved Casting Hobbles.

It is necessary sometimes to twitch some horses to make them stand quiet; but this sort of thing should be dispensed with when possible, as there is a great deal to be done with horses by gentle usage.

The instruments here set forth are to be had of Mr. Long, Veterinary-instrument Maker to his Majesty, the Veterinary College, and the Army, 217, High Holborn.

The foregoing is a list of such medicines, instruments, &c., as I think are necessary at all times to be kept on the premises of a large racing establishment, for the immediate relief of any of the horses that may fall amiss. They are generally such as are used by experienced training grooms, who themselves bleed and physic all horses entrusted to their care, as often as they conceive it necessary in assisting in the getting of such horses into condition. They also make use of their own external applications—as ointments, lotions, with bandages; fomentations, or poultices, which they apply to their horses' legs whenever they may have become amiss from strong work, or to their heels when cracked by sudden work of travelling. Such compositions as are here mentioned, these men generally make up themselves, and from practice in this way, they become acquainted with the due proportions of these medicines, both in their original and compounded state.

But to keep their memories refreshed, and thereby prevent them from falling into error, I should strongly recommend to them the second volume of a work published by Mr. White, Veterinary Surgeon, of Exeter. It is entitled the "VETERINARY MATERIA MEDICA," and is a very useful book. I further recommend to the owners of horses, to training, hunting, and more

particularly to saddle-horse grooms, that in case of any horse falling constitutionally amiss with any active disease, or being otherwise seriously injured by mechanical injury, to call in immediately to the aid of such horse, an experienced Veterinary Surgeon; for, as a training groom far surpasses in knowledge a saddle-horse groom, with regard to the condition of horses,—so does the Veterinary Surgeon, by long practice, surpass the training groom in the knowledge and treatment of any cases of serious constitutional or local disease.

CHAPTER IX.

ON CLOTHING, ETC.

VARIOUS are the sorts of clothes, and various are the purposes for which they are used, about a race-horse; but one very principal use of them in the training of horses, is to lighten those of strong constitutions of their flesh, without injuring their legs; and this they do most effectually, if they are sufficiently and properly applied on their sweating days. To shew that they are not to be dispensed with, let us, for example, suppose a craving, lusty horse to be put into training, and that he is to work without clothes. The groom, with a view to have the horse light, must get what is commonly called the waste and spare off him, or the horse cannot possibly run his length at a racing pace; therefore, to attain the point of getting such a horse clean in his muscles without the application of clothes, the groom must give him not only very strong gallops, but he would be obliged to sweat him often at very long lengths; at least, twice the distance he would

have to go in clothes; and even then, should the morning be cool, the horse would most likely sweat but little. He would, consequently, be but triflingly lightened of his flesh. This is not the only inconvenience; the length and pace being so often got into him, perhaps on hard ground, his legs and feet, from the weight of his body, together with that of his rider, would soon become so seriously injured as to occasion his work being stopped. Nor could physic be given to such a horse often enough, to assist in lightening him of his flesh, without too much debilitating his constitution. In short, such a horse as I have here described, could not be brought into racing form without the use of clothes. There are some very light delicate horses which may be trained without either physic or clothes. These are such as are naturally light in themselves, are of good speed, and seldom engaged but in short distances.

As well as describing the clothes which are used for the purpose of training race-horses, I shall also give a brief description how every other article in the saddlery line, which may be in use either in the stables or about the horses, should be made. For unless a saddler is constantly in the habit of working for a race-horse stable, he would not know how to make many of the things which training grooms have to make use of in the practice of their profession.

The clothes used for race-horses when in training, are in different suits. They are made of different kinds of stuff, are divided into different parts, and are

called by the following names :—hood, sheet, quarter-piece, breast-cloth, pad-cloth, and fillet-cloth, with rollers to secure them ; these form a complete suit of clothes. They are bound round the edges with any sort of fancy-coloured binding the owner may make choice of. But the last mentioned cloth, which is made of white swan's skin, I believe is now out of use in most stables, the hood answering every purpose of this cloth, which was formerly used to throw over the horse's loins while feeding, after his being dressed ; and it was sometimes used next to the horse's skin, under other clothes, after sweating. But I shall describe a cloth much better adapted for this purpose.

Of the different sorts of clothes, those which are used on the most common occasions, should be made of rather a thin light sort of kersey check. The check which is made use of for gentlemen's hunters and saddle horses, is much too thick and too heavy. Clothes made of this check are not long in use with race-horses before they become stiff and hard from the sweat getting into them ; and if in this state they should be used next the horse's skin, they would (unless kept soft by being often washed) be very apt to chafe a thin-skinned horse, when in work. A race-horse's clothes should be soft and light ; and to obtain the necessary warmth, they should be increased in number as occasion may require. The hoods, breast-cloths, and sheets are made for race-horses as for most others, but the quarter-pieces should not be made so deep as for hunters ; for when it is necessary to cover

the belly of a race-horse, either when he is sweating or in physic, a body-sweater or sheet may be used for the purpose. But these quarter-pieces should be longer than those used for horses in common. They should reach back within a hand's breadth of the top of the horse's tail, and come well forward over his withers and shoulders. And it would be well to substitute a softer material for the leather, which is mostly placed on this part of the quarter-piece, to give a firm hold to the straps which secure the breast-cloth; or if it be of leather, I think that of which the seats of saddles are made is to be preferred; boys' knuckles would then be less liable to be chafed when riding hard pulling horses. Inside of the sheets and quarter-pieces, there should be loops to attach the quarter-strings to, to prevent the clothes from blowing up at exercise when the wind is high; but when the horses are in the stable, and working off their physic, they should be taken off; and so they should also with mares. Or, instead of these quarter-strings to keep the clothes down when the horses are out on a windy day, I think that loops on each side the centre and back part of the quarter-piece and sheet would be more convenient, so that a piece of binding might be attached to these loops, in the way of cruppers, with such horses as would bear it.

The clothes next to be described are those which are termed the sweaters. They are made of white woollen stuff called swan's skin. The hood is to be made without ears, and this for the convenience of putting

on other hoods over it. And it is to be observed, whenever there is occasion to use more hoods than one, that the last is the only one that should have ears to it.

The next cloth used for a horse to sweat in is called a body-sweater. It should be made sufficiently long, so as to reach from the top of the horse's tail up to very near his ears; and it should be sufficiently deep at this part so as to lap round the neck, and cover the shoulders. That part of the cloth which comes sloping off from the horse's flanks must be made long enough to lap well over under the horse's belly; for this purpose, the centre part of it should be nearly two yards and a half long. This cloth, properly made, resembles in form a common sheet, only that is much fuller in every part, so as to cover the horse all over, his head, ears, and legs excepted.

The next cloth used in sweating is called a breast-sweater. It should be made full three yards in length, and three quarters of a yard in breadth. In the middle part of it, there should be a mark made by sewing on a piece of stuff of a different colour, that its centre may be easily perceived. This saves time and trouble in putting it on. This is the last cloth put on the horse when he is going to sweat, and it is a very useful one. Indeed it cannot well be done without, as it keeps all the other clothes down and in place, and prevents the admission of air to the surface of the horse's body when he is going rapidly along. In addition to these sweating clothes, there are others

used with them, such as lengthy blanket-like sort of quarter-pieces, or thick woollen blankets, with a common checkered quarter-piece on the top. But when a horse has to sweat, four, five, or six times, doubly clothed, the additional clothes then made use of, are the old checkered clothes which have become so much worn as not to be thought good enough for the horse to wear in the stables by day, or to go out in to the morning or evening exercise. These old clothes are put in repair in the winter, before the horses go into regular training, and the leather and straps should be taken off the withers of the clothes. There is no occasion for leather about any part of the clothes a horse has to sweat in; and whenever they become stiff and hard from repeated use, they should be washed and perfectly dried; they may then be rolled up with the scrapers * in them, and put in a dry cupboard, in the common saddle room.

There are other suits of woollen clothes, which are made of white serge. They are for the horses to wear in summer, when it may be too hot for them to wear the thick clothes. On such occasions, these white

* Scrapers are wooden instruments, used for the purpose of scraping the horses after sweating. They are from 18 to 20 inches in length, in breadth from two and a half to three inches, and made round at the ends. The back part of them is about three eights of an inch in thickness, and rounded. From this back part, they are sloped off to the front edge, which should be smoothly rounded, of a substance to give sufficient strength to the edge to stand the scraping of the sweat off the horse's body. Scrapers are made of elder, box, oak, ash or beach.

serge clothes are very useful. There are also suits of white linen or calico clothes; these are mostly used in the hot months of July and August, for the horses to go to exercise in the evening. They are very proper for light delicate flighty horses, which are easily alarmed and are often breaking out in sweats, and, in some measure, they prevent the flies from annoying the horses; they are convenient on running days for some horses to walk to the course in. There should be with each suit of clothes a linen and a flannel rubber.

It sometimes happens, that a horse bites and tears his clothes in the stables; any horse doing this sort of thing, should have a quarter-piece made of horse hair, to stand in the stable with. It should be lined inside so as to prevent the hair from irritating his skin. It should be made to answer the purpose of a breast cloth, by its being allowed to come well forward; there should be a buckle and strap in front, to keep it in its proper situation round the chest. When this does not answer the purpose, a cradle, properly made, is sometimes used, or what may answer the purpose as well, a strong stick secured at one end of the horse's collar, at the other end to the roller. These are all the clothes which are necessary to be used in the training of race-horses; and how they are to be made use of, for different horses, either in or out of the stables, I shall fully explain when on the subject of training race-horses.

Whether boots are considered as a part of a race-

horse's clothing is quite immaterial. As they cannot be trained safely without them, I shall here speak of their use, and describe how they are to be made. They are to be worn at all times when the horses are at exercise, and are, of course, for the purpose of preventing them from injuring their legs; but more particularly when in strong work, by warding off the blows they are apt to give themselves with their feet in changing their legs, from being sometimes over exerted in their sweats. Some horses strike the fetlock joint; others strike between the fetlock joint and the knee; and there are some few which will at times strike very close under the knee, which is termed "speedy cutting." The consequence of this would be, if they had not boots on, that their legs would become swollen, and highly inflamed; and as they would thence become lame, their work must necessarily be stopped. However good and true a goer a horse may be, it is highly improper that he should go into strong work without boots, or indeed to any sort of exercise, until his action is well known; not even to walk to the course to run, if it is a long distance, should a horse go without boots. In fact, there can be no objection to their wearing them at all times when out, unless it is when they are immediately coming up to the post to start; they are then to be taken off. Boots are on some occasions useful on horses' legs, when they are in the stable; but this is with such of them only as are apt, when being dressed, to throw their legs very much about in

the stall; and from this habit, they will sometimes give themselves blows on their legs. With horses which do this sort of thing, and which may not have been accustomed to fetters, it may be the safer way to let their boots remain on after they come in from exercise, until they are dressed and clothed up. A trainer cannot be too careful of his horses' legs, but more particularly of the legs of such horses as require strong work.

Now, accordingly as horses strike themselves from the fetlock joint to the knee, so should the length of the boots be regulated, and their size must be according to the size of the horse's leg. They should be made of the same stuff as their woollen clothes. Some boots may be made so short that two buckles are sufficient to secure them on; others require three buckles, and some few may require four. This must naturally depend on how high up different horses may strike themselves; at the bottom and front part they should be hollowed out, to give freedom to the action of the fetlock joint, and also to prevent friction in that part. The edges of the boots on the outside of the leg should be made to lap over about an inch, to relieve the pressure of the buckles. Some boots are made to tie with strings; this is a matter of choice; I think the first mentioned security by far the best. They should be lined inside with white serge or linen; and that part of the boot which goes up the inside of the leg, should be padded, and the outside of the same part should be covered with leather, such

as the seats of saddles are made of. Horses that are tolerably even goers, and are not much in the habit of changing their legs, or striking themselves, may not require the boots to be made so very thick on the inside. The edge of the boot may be bound with the same sort of binding as the horse's clothes. That part of a long boot, which is placed on the inside of the horse's leg, should be shaped from its buckling part on the outside, to a sort of oval at the top and bottom on the inside; that is, it should be made to protect the inside of the leg, if necessary, from the fetlock to the knee, but with as little incumbrance on the outside as possible. There will be but few instances in which a boot will require more than three buckles. But there is one thing which all boots require, and that is *care*. As the boots of race-horses are so constantly in use, too much attention cannot be paid to their being kept clean and soft; if wet when taken off, they should be well dried, rubbed and brushed.

It is far the safest to travel race-horses in knee-caps, which have low action, going carelessly and near the ground; and although knee-caps have been so long in use, I have seldom seen any which were well made. If they are properly made, there is no occasion for the long strap which is sometimes placed over the horse's withers, so as to reach sufficiently low down on each side of the horse's legs to be attached to each knee-cap, for the purpose of keeping them up. If they are made and put on as I shall here direct, they will not only

keep well up, but horses may travel very comfortably in them. The size of the piece of check kersey of which a knee cap is made, should be seventeen inches by twelve, and the longer length is that which is to go round the bottom part of the fore-arm, immediately above the knee. There should be two pieces of about two inches, and of a triangular shape, cut out of the centre of the top and bottom edge, and those edges from which the pieces were cut are to be sewn together, so as to make the centre of the knee-cap perfectly hollow, which will give all the liberty necessary to the action of the horse's knee when on. This hollow part on the inside of the knee-cap should be lined with a piece of white serge, and between the lining and the knee-cap there should be a little stuffing; but I see no necessity for covering the outside of this part of the knee-cap with leather. The edge at the top part of the knee-cap should be turned down outside, for the breadth of an inch, and either before or after it is sewn, there should be a little stuffing put in here, to form a pad round the top, and the surface of this pad should be lined with a strip of soft shammy or doe-skin. The upper strap and buckle, used for securing the knee-cap, should be placed outside at each end, a little below the centre of the padding. The strap and buckle is sometimes sewn on all round the padding. This should not be, as by its pressure it would do away with the little elasticity the padding might otherwise possess. A buckle and strap, must, of course, be attached to the lower part of the knee-cap. When

knee-caps are to be used, such as I have here given a description of, will, I think, be found to answer the purpose. In putting them on, the upper buckle and strap should be sufficiently tightened to keep the boot from passing over the joint of the knee, nor does it require to be drawn very tight to answer this purpose, if the buckle and strap below be left quite slack, so that the horse's action does not produce any strain whatever on the upper knee-cap. Knee-caps being used for travelling, are, like boots, exposed to wet and dirt; therefore, after they are taken off, they should be dried, brushed, and made soft.

The things which are next made use of about the fore legs of such horses as may require them, are fetters. They are made similar to couples which are used for the coupling of dogs together; the chain should be from ten to twelve inches in length, with an inch and a quarter triangular link at each end. The straps which are to go round the pastern of the horse's leg is to be seventeen inches in length, and an inch and a quarter in breadth. Along the inside, from where the buckle is put on, those straps should be lined for the space of eleven inches with check kersey, or soft leather. Whichever lining may be used, should be of a sufficient width to turn down over the edges of the strap, to prevent friction.

Their use is to prevent horses from knocking their beds about, and also to prevent them from throwing their legs about at the time of their being dressed. With such horses as have contracted this habit, they

should be worn at all times in the stable. They should also be put on those young ones as are inclined to those habits on their first being brought from their paddocks to the stables.

The common Dutch collars used for tying up the horses in the stables are as convenient as any others; but for a horse which is in the habit of getting himself loose by rubbing his collar off, it is necessary to have a neck strap. There should be a loop or runner on each cheek or side of the collar, for the strap of the setting muzzle to pass through, to keep the muzzle on, and more firmly fixed in its situation. It is safer, and much more convenient, than tying a piece of string or tape round these parts of the muzzle and collar, as was formerly the practice with training grooms on such occasions. The rein of the collar should be made to buckle on to it, and not to be sewed. A dressing muzzle should be made of stout neat's leather; the bars or broad straps of this muzzle ought to be in length from seventeen to eighteen inches; in breadth, they should be from two and a half to three inches. These straps should be lined with sheet iron, crossed in the centre, and there rivetted together. The strap which goes round and forms the top part of the muzzle should be of the breadth of the two first mentioned, but in length it should be two feet four. The strap for securing the muzzle when on the horse's head should be in length three feet six, and the strap for the buckle on the opposite side, should not be more than two inches in length.

This is a stout and weighty muzzle, but it is a useful one to keep in the home stables. A muzzle on this principle may be made lighter, for the purpose of being taken with a horse when he is travelling, and if it were lined throughout with tin, (and the sheet iron omitted,) and holes punched in the tin, it might serve as a setting muzzle; in which case there would be no occasion to take more than the one muzzle, unless with a very troublesome and vicious horse.

This muzzle should be put on all race-horses at the time of their being dressed. One principal use of it is, to prevent any horse which may be so inclined, from biting the boy when cleaning him. But unless the groom orders it to be done, boys who look after quiet horses, merely chain up their heads, and are apt to neglect putting on the dressing muzzle. This neglect should never be countenanced; for a dressing muzzle is very useful for all horses, either quiet or otherwise, as thorough-bred horses are more or less inclined, when being dressed, to gnaw and bite at the cribbing board. When they come in from morning or evening exercise, most of them have to stand for some time after being dressed, before they are fed, and whenever they have to stand in this way, they should stand with their heads up and with their muzzles on, those excepted which are very delicate.

Thorough-bred horses, when standing without any thing before them to eat, are very apt to lick the stall and manger rails. If they get much into the habit of doing the latter, some of them become crib-biters; now,

if they have dressing muzzles on, they cannot do this sort of thing. Another advantage attending their being on at proper times, is, that horses generally become more reconciled to that in which they have to stand when they are being set.

A setting muzzle should be of stout leather. From within about three inches of the upper part, there are rows of holes about three quarters of an inch in diameter, and two inches apart. As well as these holes being continued to the lower edge of the muzzle, others are similarly punched in the bottom part of it. The strap for securing the muzzle on the horse's head should be three feet six inches in length. Being of this length, it can readily be passed through the runners or loops which I have advised being placed on each side of a race-horse's collar, so that the horse cannot possibly get the muzzle off. The nearer the buckle on the opposite side is to the edge of the muzzle, the better.

I will now make some few remarks on the different reins, which are at times used for various purposes.

A leading rein is made similar to that which a post-boy, when driving, makes use for the off-side horse, and is buckled on a race-horse's bit in the same manner. The use of this rein is to lead a horse to the course, I mean, such a one as, when he is in his best form, is inclined to be riotous there, and he will more particularly require to have this rein on if he has to cross the downs alone for a long distance before he comes to the course; and it is also advisable with such a horse, to put the boy up who looks after him to ride him to the course,

as well as to have a boy with some power to lead him to it; and if there be more than one road to the race-ground, he should be taken by that on which he is likely to meet the least annoyance.

A martingal rein is made with buckles and billets at each end, but it does not require to be so broad as the snaffle rein which is sewn to the bit, under which this martingal rein is attached; and close up to each buckle and billet there should be sewn across the rein a piece of stout narrow leather. It must be of sufficient substance, breadth, and length, to prevent the martingal-reins from passing over those pieces of leather, and thereby becoming fixed or entangled in the buckles of the rings, which would so confine the horse's head in his exercise or running, as to be very likely productive of very serious consequences both to the horse and the jockey. The martingal to be used with this rein is made as all common martingals are, only that it should be made light in proportion to the rein with which it is to be used for such horses as get their heads a little out of place either in exercise or running. The martingal rein is usually knotted and left on the horse's neck until the rider finds he has occasion to take it up, when by a gentle pull with it, he brings the horse's head in place. There is another description of running martingal, or martingal-reins, which are made in the following manner, the leather at the bottom part, or end, must be an inch and a half in breadth. When used, the end, like that of the common martingal, is attached to the girths of the saddle. From the girths, this part of the

martingal passes forward between the horse's fore legs to about the centre of his chest, where the leather of the breadth above-mentioned terminates. To this point should be attached the two running reins, and these being sufficiently long, are passed through each eye of the bit, into the rider's hand. The ends are here secured together by a small buckle.

There are other running reins, some of which are attached to the girths under the flaps of the saddle. This will depend on the different positions that colts, in breaking, or horses in training or running, may be inclined to get their heads into, or according as they may be more or less disposed to pull at the rider.

The top or head-part of a gag-rein is flat for about eighteen inches. The edges of the rein should after this space be sewn together, and made perfectly round for nearly a foot on each side, so as to admit of this working freely through the ring of the gag bit or snaffle. From the round part, the rein is left flat for the length of a common snaffle or bridle rein. These reins are generally used by the boys when they are riding young ones in their exercise, to keep up the heads of such as are apt to pull and bore with their heads too low or too close to the ground.

The reins I have here described, when applied to such horses as may require them, are of infinite service. They are to enable the rider to get up a horse's head, and to keep it in its proper place, which empowers him more easily to hold a horse as he may be going along in either his gallop, sweat, or race, as well

as to pull him up at the conclusion of either of them.

And such reins are found very useful to the very small boys, when riding young ones in their exercise, or when those light weights are put up to ride horses which may have delicate fore legs, (which is not a very uncommon occurrence), and which may require pretty strong work. Although some such horses may pull fair, and with their heads in a good place, yet they may pull much too strong for small light boys to hold them in their gallops and sweats. To have a horse of this sort break away, and make too free with himself in his work, would not be well, nor would it perhaps answer to put a curb or a Pelham bridle on, to hold such a horse with. Being rode in either of these, he may get to bend his knees too much, go high and clamber in his work, which would be a loss of time, and an inexperienced groom would be very loth, on account of the delicacy of the horse's legs, to put up a lad of a size and power that could hold such a horse in a plain snaffle, which is the sort of bridle he should be rode in. The groom, therefore, in order to have as little weight as possible on the horse's legs, puts up a small light boy to ride him, and to give this little boy sufficient power to hold the horse, the groom orders one of the reins above described to be put on, which he thinks will answer the purpose; at the same time, giving the boy orders how he is to use the rein so as to be enabled to hold or pull the horse up. The bits generally used for race-horses to run in, vary according

to circumstances. Those which are the most frequently used, are snaffles. These as well as other bits for racing purposes, should be made of steel, and as light as possible, that is, they should not be of more substance than is absolutely necessary to prevent them from breaking when holding a hard pulling horse in his exercise or race. It is advisable to have the cheeks of these bits made larger than those of bits in common use. They should be six inches and three quarters in length. For in riding a hard pulling horse, on a small round course, more particularly should he be inclined to hang at his turns, the rider, by persevering with a horse of this description at the turn, so as not to lay out of his ground in making it, may pull the bit, should the cheek of it be short, into the horse's mouth, from which circumstance the horse would have the power of laying a long way out of his ground, and would perhaps run out of the course. A horse which is known to be very difficult at his turns, or which is likely to bolt, should be rode in a bit, the inside of the cheek of which should be armed with prickers.

The eye of a racing snaffle should be made large. It should be an inch and three quarters in the clear; for when a horse has to run in a martingal, it is necessary to have two reins.

The next bit to be noticed is the Pelham. It should be made equally light with the snaffle, except the cheeks of it, which are to be sufficiently stout in proportion to their length, and the eyes of this bit should

be made of the same size as those of the snaffle, for it is at times necessary to use a martingal with this bit.

With the exception of the eyes to the cheek and the joint in the mouth-piece, it is made as a curb bit. The Pelham is a useful bit, and it answers the purposes both of a curb and a snaffle, with the advantage of the horse's having only one bit in his mouth. It is much lighter than curb bits in general use; and this is another advantage, for care should be taken not to have more weight about the head or feet of a race-horse when running, than can possibly be avoided. The curb rein of this bit, as with the martingal-rein of the snaffle, remains knotted on the horse's neck until the rider has occasion to use it when the horse is making too free with the pace.

The next bit to be mentioned is the Chiffney bit. This bit was invented by the celebrated jockey, Mr. Samuel Chiffney, of Newmarket, who, in my juvenile days, was principal rider to his present Majesty. I am not aware of any improvement having been made in this bit since it was first invented. It is made as any other curb, with the exception of the top part of the cheeks. Instead of an eye to each cheek for the head part of the bridle to be fixed to, there are two curb hooks working on a pivot on the inside, for each end of the curb chain to be attached. There are also two pieces of steel about two inches long, the lower end of each piece is attached to the outside of the cheek of the bit, a little above the mouth-piece, also working on a pivot, in the same manner as the curb hooks, but rivetted on the

outside. The top part of these pieces has each an eye to which the head part of the bridle is attached. These pieces, thus placed, act upon the principle of a lever, and with little strength it becomes a very severe bit.

Chiffney, in his book, observes that this bridle is to enable the light weights to hold their horses from running away, and to run to order in, and that is best for all horses to run in. He particularly recommends the use of it to ladies who ride and drive, as they not only excel in holding horses from running away, but make horses "stop with more safety, ride more pleasantly, and carriage handsomer."

I think it is a good bit for these last mentioned purposes, and with a patient rider it is a good bridle to hold horses that pull hard either in hunting or on the road; for in pulling at horses of this description, if you balk them of their stride, there is no great stake lost by it. But I must observe, that the principal purpose for which Chiffney intended this bit, was to enable light weights, the most of whom are boys, to hold horses in their running, and to ride to order. But I think it is a dangerous bridle for boys to be entrusted with, to ride a race in. It is a sort of bridle, which, to be properly used with the advantages pointed out by Chiffney, requires an experienced jockey, as he was himself, who has a cool, clear head, and a very light hand; two things which boys are seldom possessed of.

If a horse should make very free with himself in running, a boy would be likely to use all his strength, and by pulling too rashly at the horse with this bridle,

would most likely pull him out of his stride. The disadvantage that would arise from this, will be described by and bye. The different bridles and martingals which best answer the purpose for different horses to run in, are ascertained from the observations the groom makes in the working of his horses, together with the account the boys give of the manner in which each horse may go in his exercise.

As the weights vary for different horses to run under, so must racing-saddles vary in their sizes and weights for horses to run in, to enable the different jockeys to get themselves down to the weights for which they are engaged to ride, without debilitating themselves too much by wasting.

Racing-saddles are therefore made to weigh from two pounds to two stone; but these weights may be said to be the two extremes, as they are more frequently from three pounds to twenty-one. A two-pound saddle is seldom used unless when a horse is engaged to run under a very light weight. All saddles should be made of the very best materials; but this being a very light saddle, it is necessary that every part of it should be strictly attended to.

A three-pound saddle is in more frequent use than the two-pound saddle, and if well made, it is sufficiently strong for a jockey of from nine stone to nine stone seven to ride in; unless, from frequent use, it is allowed to get out of repair, in which case, a stirrup leather, or stirrup, or even the tree of the saddle, may break, if the jockey from necessity (as when riding a

hard-pulling horse) should have to depend more on his stirrups than in his usual custom.

A four-pound saddle is to be preferred to either of the above when it can be used, as it can be made stronger and larger, and gives more room to the rider. The flaps of this saddle may have a little stuffing in them before the knee.

A seven-pound saddle is also used for horses to run in, and if well made, it is as convenient to ride in as a stone saddle. Saddles of this weight are also the proper ones for boys to ride in when exercising. The stone saddle is the common sized saddle, and is also occasionally used for horses to run in.

Racing men endeavour, and I think very properly, to keep the secrets of their stables as much to themselves as they possibly can, as weight impedes the action of a race-horse in running.

One way to enable them to do this in the trying of their horses, is by the manner in which they have their saddles made, for the weight of saddles is commonly judged of by their size.

The saddles kept in a racing establishment are made to vary in weight from those in common use. In making saddles to run and try in, the trees of them are occasionally leaded by the tree-maker or saddler, agreeably to the directions either may receive from his employer; and a four-pound saddle in this way is made to weigh seven pounds. A seven-pound saddle is made to weigh a stone, and a stone saddle is made to weigh twenty-one pounds, or sometimes two stone. If

these saddles are properly made, it is impossible to discover by the eye what weight they are.

These are mostly used for the horse to be tried in, and they are also used for the King's plate weights for horses to run in; and the number of them necessary to be kept, will depend on the extent of a racing establishment.

The web-girths, circingles, and stirrup-leathers for racing saddles, should be made in breadth, size, and substance, according to the weight of the saddle.

There is another way of making up the weights for horses to run and try in, when the jockeys are too light. This is done by fixing trusses on the seats of the saddles, and also on the thighs of the jockey, and they are sometimes made to go round his body; but when jockeys want but little to make up their weight, small bags of shot, weighing a pound each, or a piece of lead of the same weight, and bent to the form of the thigh, are carried in the jockey's breeches pocket.

Trusses are made by the saddlers, of blue and white striped bed-tick, (leather, I think, is preferable.) From that part of the truss which covers the pummel of the saddle, along the seat part which covers the cantle of the saddle, it is sewn in straight lines, leaving a sufficient space between the lines of about an inch and three quarters, or two inches at farthest. These spaces form what is usually called the pipes or truss into which the shot is put, that is, when shot is made use of to load them with. The under or back part of the truss is generally made of leather, and fits over the

cantle of the saddle. The upper edge of the tick is bound with leather; there are holes to be made in this and the lower part, which holes should be punched small and close. At this cantle part of the truss the shot is put in, and to prevent its escaping, these two edges are brought together by a strong leather lace. I do not approve of this plan, as, from a truss which has been long in use, and which has no other security than this lace, the shot may partly escape, from the pressure of the jockey and the concussion produced by the stride of the horse in running; the consequence of which would be that the jockey would come in short of weight, which should not be allowed to happen. I think the better and more secure way would be to put the shot in at the pummel; or perhaps, that which may be preferable to either, would be to have some canvass bags made, rather smaller than the pipes of the truss; fill these bags with the shot, and sew up the ends. They may then be put into the pipe of the truss, and the truss at the cantle part may then be sufficiently secured by the lace in the usual way.

This plan of making canvass bags will, I think, be found to be the most convenient way of loading the truss, as the training groom may now and then have occasion to make use of this same truss, for a purpose rather the reverse of that for which it was originally intended. But of this matter, I shall speak more fully when on the subject of trying the horses. To secure the truss to the saddle, there should be firmly attached to the former, four pieces of stout leather, with two holes

punched in each piece. These pieces of leather should be placed one on each side of the broad part of the seat of the truss, and one on each side in front of the pummel part of it. These pieces meet similar ones which are attached to the saddle, and by the cantle part of the truss being made to fit over this part of the saddle, the truss is perfectly steady if secured with leather laces.

The weight of this sort of truss varies, as much depends on the size of the saddle with which it is to be used. It may be made to weigh from fourteen to twenty-one pounds.

There are also thigh trusses; these are for the purpose of jockeys making up their weight, when the weights they are going to ride do not run very high. But that these trusses may not inconvenience the jockey, they should not weigh more than six or eight pounds, three or four pounds on each thigh. They are made of the same materials, and upon much the same principles, as those used on the saddles. They should be made to fit round or bend to the front part of the jockey's thighs. If they are well made, and have straps properly attached to them, to go round the thighs and body of the rider, so as to keep each truss secure to the thigh, they are to be preferred to a saddle truss of the same weight, or even to the seat of the saddle being covered with lead; as the weight, being so carried, is not so dead on the horse's back, as it would be were it placed on the seat of the saddle. There are also body trusses; they are of the same materials, and made in the form of a double shooting belt,

and are buckled on round the waist. These latter are not often used, unless to make up with saddle and thigh trusses, the weigh of a light jockey who may be going to ride for any of His Majesty's plates, or perhaps for a Welter stakes. The articles mentioned in this chapter, are generally made to the order of the training groom, by the saddler who lives in the neighbourhood of a racing establishment, and who is in the habit of working for race-horse stables—as at Newmarket, York, Doncaster, or Epsom. But when such things are made in London, I believe the saddler principally employed is Mr. Tate, in Upper Grosvenor-street; and bits and stirrups are generally procured from Mr. Latchford, in Piccadilly.

CHAPTER X.

ON TRAINING GROUNDS.

The ground requisite for the purpose of training race-horses, should of course, be large open downs. They can scarcely be too extensive; for, as I shall by and bye shew, there are horses of a certain description which will require a great variety of ground to exercise upon. Indeed, the greater the extent of ground for all horses to work upon in training, the better, as it becomes necessary when a certain portion of ground has been repeatedly galloped over by the horses, to change them to other parts, with a view to keep the surface of the turf level and free from holes and small sudden rises, more particularly so on a red clayey soil; otherwise in wet weather, the horse would get too much foot-hold on such ground. This induces many of them to go high, and clamber in their work, which is a loss of time to them. When it can be conveniently done, it is a good plan (at proper time) to roll ground that has been much worked, so as to make

the surface of it perfectly flat. Hard ground has certainly its inconveniences, I allow; but as far as my own observations have gone on this subject, it is not the hardness of the ground which so frequently injures the horse's LEGS, but it is the uneven surface of it, that so often occasions horses to break down, as it is termed, on their fore legs,—I mean, the sideland uneven parts of ground, such as small mole hills, or in crossing small cart ruts, which scarcely appear of any consequence. Should a craving strong horse going along in his sweat, loaded with sweaters, and perhaps a pretty big boy up to get him along at the pace, having a long way to come in his sweat, and being a little weary—should such a horse, under these circumstances, put his foot on any such uneven surface as I have described, he suddenly and unavoidably throws a very unequal portion of his weight on the main tendon, or on some of the ligaments of the leg or joint. This might so injure the leg of a horse of a strong constitution, as to render him incapable of undergoing the training necessary to bring him to post in his proper form.

I remember some years ago a mare being ordered to go over the sweating ground, merely to keep the length in her. She had a light boy up, and nothing upon her but a quarter-piece and hood; the ground at the time was in good order, that is to say, it was rather soft than otherwise. The mare was easily held, and went over the ground in her usual stride, at a fair and even pace; on pulling up, she was lame, both her

hind legs being badly stained. She was never trained afterwards. All men conversant with horses, know that it is no uncommon occurrence for them to break down *before*, but this is the only instance I ever knew of a horse breaking in both hind legs at one time. Horses sometimes break their legs in running—I have seen two or three instances of this, and on one occasion I had an opportunity of ascertaining the cause. The horses having come to the post to run, they were started, and had not gone more than a quarter of a mile before one fell and broke his leg. The ground was in good order, but on examining that part of it where the horse had fallen, it was clearly to be seen, that the horse's toe had come in contact with a small mole-hill, which had occasioned the accident. Most training and running grounds with which I am acquainted in the southern parts of England are very hard. In the hot dry months of July and August, such grounds produce great concussion and heat in the feet of craving horses, which are mostly in strong work; and in proportion to the length and pace they are obliged to go on such ground in their gallops and sweats, many of them become more or less feeling in their feet; so much so that at last, the pace and length cannot be got sufficiently well into them, so as to bring them into their proper form. They are then sold or put out of training; and if their feet are much injured from this sort of work, they are of little use except for slow draught. The more training grounds vary, as to hill and vale, the greater will be the variety

of hills for the horses occasionally to work upon, and the greater also will be the variety of soft and cool bottoms for them to walk or gallop on in the evenings during the heat of the summer.

The towns adjacent to the town of Newmarket, still afford a variety of training and running ground, and in my juvenile days when an exercise boy here, they were much more extensive ; but a great portion of the downs on the left and right of the road, leading to Bournbridge, has been enclosed for some years past. On the west side of the town, to the right of the Cambridge road, are the different courses, which are kept in excellent order. There is also good ground here for the horses that stand at this end of the town to take their gallops on, along the flat by the side of the ditch, and home up the Cambridge hill ; and over the flat the whole of the horses can sweat, without injuring the courses ; coming home round the turn of the lands on the lower side of the B.C. to the King's rubbing house to scrape. On the east side of the town is the Warren hill. This is the principal training ground for the horses that stand at this part of the town to take their gallops on. In the valley at the bottom of this hill, round the gorse, there was some good walking exercise ground; and there is also some adapted for a similar purpose, on what is called the cricket ground, on the left of the high road leading to Bury. From the valley up the Warren hill, there is every description of gallop to be had for the horses that is requisite, as the severity of each can be regulated by the length and pace.

The first gallop which I shall notice, I will, from its situation, and by way of distinction, call the outside gallop; it passes up by the side of the road leading to Bury. As the horses are approaching the top, they are turned to the right towards the plantation, and here they have tolerably good ground to pull up on. The second gallop is similar to the first, but not quite so long; it passes up from the valley in about the centre part of the ground, between the first-mentioned gallop and where the little stone building called the King's chair, used to stand. A certain portion of this ground answers very well for the purpose of what is called setting the horses on their legs, previous to their taking the longer gallops. In the centre of the ground, or what may be called King's-chair hill, are some very good gallops up to the front of the plantation. Here, after the horses are pulled up, is some tolerably good ground for them to be at walking exercise, sheltered by the fir trees from the easterly wind. There is another good long gallop which can be had, commencing in the valley by the gorse, and going on a short distance towards the south, and turning to the left, proceeding to the top of the hill, and leaving the plantation on the left. There is afterwards a good run home. The surface of the whole of the downs here being on chalky soil, may be said to be rather hard in the hot summer months, which produces great concussion and heat in the feet of such horses as are in strong work; but for the convenience of training, and running so great a number of horses as are at all times standing

in and adjacent to Newmarket, these downs, from their extent and variety, may perhaps be said to be more convenient than any we have in the south of England.

The principal public training grounds in the north of England (in Yorkshire) are four, each of which I shall here separately describe, as the advantages in favor of the feet of horses that are in strong work, when working over the soft and elastic surfaces of these training grounds, must, I think, be very considerable, when compared with the hard, unyielding surface of the grounds in the south.

Black Hamilton is the most extensive ground of the four; its surface is on a red clayey soil, in consequence of which, it becomes very hard in dry weather, and would very much injure the feet of horses, if it were not that the turf is intermixed with a great deal of moss, which gives to it great elasticity, and prevents the concussion that would otherwise take place in the feet of such horses as have long lengths to go in their gallops and sweats. A small portion of this ground is situated in front of Hamilton House stables, Low Hamilton House, and the Blucher Inn stables. This space of ground is walled in on the west, north, and east, the south part lying open to the high road leading from Thirsk to Helmsley. It is a very convenient piece of ground for the horses to go to walking exercise in winter, when the weather may be uncertain; or for them to walk or canter on in the hot summer evenings, or at any time when strong work may not be necessary for them.

The most extensive part of these mossy downs, which forms the principal ground for the horses to train upon, lays open to the west. Its limits in the east are terminated by the walls of different enclosures. The horses in going to this ground, have to pass through a wicket (a large gate here would be preferable, and much safer); the groom may then make choice of his ground; but immediately on the horses passing through the wicket, if they turn to the left, and walk for a quarter of a mile, they arrive at an angle formed by other wall enclosures; here, turning again to the left, a good gallop can be had, finishing with a gradual ascent to the Botley or round hills, which is the extent of the ground in this direction. This is a good gallop, and the pace being regulated accordingly, a horse's pipes can be well opened here. These downs are also sufficiently extensive to allow plenty of room for long striding horses to sweat over, without their experiencing any inconvenience, in turning, to put them out of their stride.

Langton Wolds is the next ground to notice. These wolds are divided by the high road leading from the town of Malton. On the left of the road is the training ground, and on the right of it is the race-course. The distance from the training stables to the ground is a mile or better; if this space of ground were a level piece of turf, there could be no very great objection to the distance; but instead of this, the horses must mostly walk upon the high road in going from the stables on the left of Malton, to the ground,

and from the stables on the right of the high road, there are three or four gates to be opened for the horses to pass through: besides which, they have to ascend a steep hill, previous to their getting on the training ground. When they do get to it, it is certainly good, being well diversified as to hill and vale. It is principally covered with short heather, intermixed with some moss, which gives to its surface great elasticity, so that there can be but little or no concussion in the feet of horses which are here in training. This ground is sufficiently extensive for training any reasonable number of horses. As the horses come to it, they walk from the high road down the vale, turning to the right, between Highfields and the Grimstone hills. There are some good short gallops up these hills, finishing at the top near the quickset hedge. These gallops answer very well to set the horses on their legs, before they take the long ones. As the horses walk back down the hills into the vale at the bottom, near to the gate leading to Settrington, they can, by commencing here, and keeping on the edge or side of the heather, leaving the Grimstone hills on the left, and high fields on the right, have a good long gallop up to the top of the hill near the road where they are pulled up. In this same direction is a good green gallop, which the horses can occasionally go on in winter, or at any time that it is in good order. There is also plenty of room on this ground for the horses to sweat, pulling up within a short distance of the rubbing house; or for any such horses as may be going

to run at Malton, they can take the last sweat or two over it, with a view to give them a knowledge of the course, provided that the ground is not too hard. Stables and water upon these wolds would be of great advantage to them; for the want of both of these, the horses, after taking their gallops, have to cross the road down the hill, going a short distance along the vale to water; they then return to the bottom of the hill, leading up to the race-ground. The hill being very steep, they canter gently up it after their water, leaving the rubbing house to the left, and pull up by the side of the course. All inconveniences of this kind would be avoided were there stables and water on the ground.

Middleham Moors (for there are two) is the third training ground. The lower moor lies adjacent to the town and stables; it is a convenient piece of ground for the horses to exercise on in winter; or indeed they may in summer take short gallops: but there is too much sideland ground, with too many ascents and descents on this lower moor for long striding horses to go here, either in their gallops or sweats, at a telling pace. The upper moor, although the smallest, affords by far the best, and indeed very good galloping ground, but the sweating ground here is rather too confined. Long striding horses, sweating here, are almost constantly turning, as it is not more than a mile, or at the farthest, a mile and a quarter round; yet this piece of ground, might, with a little expense, be made sufficiently extensive for horses of every description to sweat over, at a good sweating pace. If this were done, these moors

would be much more complete for the purpose of training horses; as on the surface of the upper moor, there is a great deal of long bent sort of grass intermixed with moss, which makes it very soft to the horses' feet.

The Whitcliff Moors, on which the horses are trained, are about two miles from the town of Richmond. The high moor is the training ground; the lower moor is the race-ground, and is within a mile of the town. The former has been much more extensive than it is at present. That portion of it which now remains as a public training ground, is about a mile long, and not more than a quarter wide, fenced in by a wall. The surface of this moor is similar to that of others in the same county, which have been already described; that is, there is a great deal of long bent grass, short heather, and moss. This ground admits of a tolerably good hill gallop; and the horses may take gentle sweats here. But to get the length into horses at the pace which is sometimes necessary, this public part of the ground I consider much too confined. In the training of horses generally, it may answer pretty well for the purpose of forwarding them in the spring to a certain state of their condition. Another objection to this ground is, that as the training stables are situated, there is a steep bad sort of hill which the horses standing in the town have to ascend and descend, or come up the turnpike road, which is a distance of two miles, with a steep hill at the commencement of it. The stables at Belleisle are not at an unreasonable

distance from the exercise ground, so that the horses standing there have some advantage over those standing in the town. The trainer who resides here has some fields through which the horses can walk, and by passing through two or three gates, reach the moor, and thereby avoid the above mentioned hill in going to exercise. This trainer has, I believe, also a certain portion of the upper moor, which is his own property, and which is adjacent to the public part of the moor, on which the horses train. This gives him a decided advantage, for by opening two large gates which are here situated, he has a communication from his own ground on to the public one, and by this means he obtains a tolerable fair portion of ground for the horses which he trains to sweat over.

But that which greatly excited my astonishment, was, that there was no rubbing-house on any part of these moors. Now that the trainer (and I may say jockey, for he has been both) who is living in Belleisle, is very competent, cannot for a moment be doubted; and, therefore, I cannot conceive why he should have neglected erecting so necessary a part of a racing establishment as a rubbing-house on his own ground. It is true that there is every convenience for horses coming into their own stables after sweating; and that all hands are at them until they are done and ready to go out again and take their gallop with the other horses, which are kept in to go up the gallop with them, so that the stables may be shut up all at one time. I allow, also, that taking up the dry cloths, wisps,

scrapers, &c. would be giving the boys plenty to do; but as craving horses generally have to take their gallops after their sweats, a rubbing-house being on the ground would save the horses going twice up and down this steep hill; or even if they go through the fields of the above-mentioned trainer, they meet with some hills, and gates to pass through. Under all these circumstances, I am of opinion that a rubbing-house on the moors would be very useful. The race-course at Richmond, when not too hard, is the most convenient for horses which stand in the town to sweat over. They may go along here in their sweats at a fair and even pace, and when pulled up, they may be taken into the saddling house to scrape, and afterwards take their gallop and go home.

The next ground I have to mention, and which is the best I have ever seen for the purpose of training horses upon, and perhaps, the very best ground known in Europe, is the CURRAGH OF KILDARE, in Ireland, which may indeed be said to be quite perfect for the training of race-horses.

It is a fine large open heath, of nearly five thousand acres of the most beautiful and elastic turf I have ever been upon. It is so suitably diversified with hills, vales, and plains, as to present every description of exercise ground that can possibly be wanted. In the months of July and August, when it is often excessively hot, and when most training grounds are found to be very dry and hard, the mossy vales of these spacious downs, even at this season of the year, are

moderately soft and cool, and every length of gallop necessary for horses to take, can be had in them ; and by the boys being directed to lay a little out of their ground either to the right or left, they may finish the gallop with whatever rise the training groom may think proper. It would be unnecessary to point out the advantages of such bottoms as these, were it not that I am writing rather for the information of those of my readers who may be inexperienced on this subject, than for those who are in high practice of training horses.

Such bottoms as I have just mentioned, are very desirable for working horses in the height of summer, as there is great risk of injuring the legs and feet of craving horses, in getting the pace and length into them on hard ground.

Too much care cannot be taken in the choice of ground for such horses to work upon. In the early part of spring, after much wet, the vales of these downs may be too soft ; when this is the case, the horses may gradually ascend the sides of the hills, or if the wind is not too high, they may go along the tops of them, where the ground is found to be very firm and good, however wet the season of the year may be. From the great extent of these downs, there is a variety of excellent ground for horses to sweat over. They can sweat here any length, with every variety of ground a trainer can possibly desire. Long or short gradual rises to teach a horse how to stride in or get up a hill, can be had, as well as long ascending

lengths for the horses to finish with in coming home in their sweats. I confess this is but a meagre description of the sweating ground; but by and bye, when I am on the subject of training the horses, this same sweating ground will be brought into use, and its advantages will be more fully developed.

The ground next to be noticed is GULLANE LINKS, in Scotland, situated to the east of Edinburgh, close to the sea. It is the best, and I believe the only ground in Scotland which will sufficiently answer the purpose of training race-horses on. The surface of this ground is a sandy soil, plentifully covered with moss, which makes it very soft and elastic for the horses' feet. It is at all times (frost excepted) in good order for horses to work on, in the dryest part of the season, as it also is in the wettest part of it; whatever quantity of rain may have fallen, is here completely absorbed in a few hours.

The extent of this ground cannot be said to be on a large scale. It is therefore better adapted for the training of country plate horses than for long striding horses, such as are principally engaged in the large stakes in the south of England.

The gallops to be taken on this ground may be occasionally varied; they can be extended from a mile and a half, to a mile and three quarters. The horses commencing their gallop at the lower side and south end of the sweating ground, can proceed along the flat for about three quarters of a mile, when they have to turn to the right, and here they find a good hill gallop

which may be continued about three quarters of a mile. On their arriving at the top, they are pulled up near a small summer-house, called "The Whim."

The flat surface under the hill may be said to be the sweating ground, on any part of which the horses may begin their sweats, continuing to go round until they have got in them whatever sweating length the groom thinks it necessary; after which, they may finish their sweats up any part of the above hill; but the sweating ground is not, in my opinion, sufficiently extensive for long striding horses.

Having now made mention of a sufficient number of training grounds, and described the advantages and disadvantages of each, I have but a few more remarks to make on this subject. I shall merely observe, that whatever exercise may be proper for horses in training the main object to be attended to is the selection on different downs of such portions of ground as may best answer the purpose for the different sorts of exercise each horse, or each class of horses, may be ordered to have, whether to walk, to gallop, or to sweat.

Walking exercise for race-horses, is principally had recourse to in the winter. As the vales of downs are somewhat sheltered by the hills from the cold winds, I should recommend them, at this season of the year, as being most eligibly situated for the horses to be in while at this sort of exercise; but, should the ground become hard from frost, and the frost likely to continue for a length of time, as there may be horses in the stables which it would be absolutely necessary

to walk out, it would not only be advisable, but more safe and convenient to lay (as is the custom) some long dung in the front yard, and let them walk there for the necessary period every day during the severity of the weather.

The ground the horses take their gallops on, is called the gallop; that is to say, when horses in training are galloping on downs, they are said to be going up the gallop; and as I have already mentioned, the greater the variety of ground such downs will afford for forming these different gallops, the greater will be the advantages in favor of the horses, if the training groom is a good judge, and knows well how to vary the working of his horses, as circumstances may require.

A groom, in selecting ground for horses to take their gallops on, should, as I have already noticed, endeavour to get it with as few sudden rises and falls in it as possible, particularly in going off in the gallop. For the first four or five hundred yards it should be level, but after this length, it should gradually rise the whole of the way home, or where the horses pull up should be a moderate sort of a hill.

The length of gallops for different horses varies occasionally. There are two lengths in general use; but as these lengths are at times deviated from, I shall here give four, namely,—half a mile—three quarters of a mile—a mile and a quarter—and a mile and a half. Generally speaking, the two middle lengths are in most frequent use, as there are few horses so delicate

but will exceed the former length; and but few so craving but that the latter will be found sufficient for them, the pace being properly regulated.

Horses which are long comers, are such as are considered to come well over the course, as the B. C. at Newmarket (after much wet); but these horses are seldom fast enough to go into any of the great stakes, such as are run for at the present day, and at the present lengths. Horses of the above description, (most of them being of good constitution), are such as are generally selected for country running. The main object to be attended to in the training of such horses is to begin with them early in the spring, for, unless it has been very dry, most grounds, at this time of the year, are in tolerable good order; that is, the surface is cool and moderately soft, so that, in working horses while the ground is in this state, there is not so much danger to be apprehended of their going amiss on their legs or feet as some of them might do, if they were to begin their work later in the season, at which time the ground may have become hard; and from the pace strong horses would occasionally have to go over it, great concussion would be produced in their feet, which would be the cause of their becoming much heated. Horses being previously prepared in the spring, have their physic afterwards given them to take the little staleness out of their constitutions which their work may have occasioned, and also to cool and refresh their legs as well as to assist in keeping them light. If this preparation be sufficiently early and well attended to,

according to the constitutions of the horses, and the time of their engagements, there will be the less to be done in the second preparation, at which time the weather may be hot and the ground hard. There are some few strong, craving, large-carcassed horses (I allude to such of them as may occasionally have to sweat as often, perhaps, as three times a fortnight) which are so frequently in strong work, that although the above necessary precautions are taken of working them early in the spring, yet they cannot be allowed to be kept so long in gentle work after their physic as those horses which I have just been speaking of; nor can they often be allowed to go over the sweating ground lightly clothed, and at such a pace as will just keep the length in them, as many of the more delicate ones may do. Such very craving horses have not only to go over the sweating ground at a tolerably good sweating pace, but most of them require to have a pretty good lot of sweaters on, or it will, I expect, be found rather difficult to keep what is called the waste and spare off them; and it is this sort of work on hard ground which is the occasion of great concussion taking place in the feet of many such horses, producing fever and inflammation in them, and which sometimes goes on progressively and imperceptibly until it terminates in what is now termed the naricular disease, but what was formerly called "being groggy." This is a description of disease which we do not find horses of slow movement (as cart horses), affected with, notwithstanding these last mentioned horses are daily

working on turnpike and paved roads. It is certainly true, that many horses' feet are naturally so perfect and so well formed, as not only to require but very little care and attention to be paid to them, but the feet of many of them are so strong and well formed, as scarcely ever to be affected by hard ground, although kept in strong work. When race-horses have such very good feet, the harder the ground is, the better some of them have appeared to me to like it; for when fresh, they have seemed to enjoy shaking their toes in a gallop. It may be fancy in me, but I often used to think, when a boy, riding exercise, that many such horses like to hear their feet tell and rattle on the ground as they were going along; and I confess I rather like the sort of race-horse that can come a running pace over hard ground. I have now described, in the best manner I am able, the different training grounds in England, Ireland, and Scotland, and have given my opinion of the advantages in favour of race-horses' feet, when they are working over such training grounds as have a soft and elastic surface, as those in the different counties I have mentioned, and which are to be preferred to the hard surfaces (in summer) of many of our training grounds in the south of England.

CHAPTER XI.

ON THE RACE COURSE.

The form and length of a race-course, must depend on the space of ground the neighbourhood may afford; generally speaking, our country courses are most of them round. As four mile heats are not so much run now as they formerly were, a well formed two mile course, or a round course of this length, is quite sufficient. In running for most plates, the starting post is also the winning post. This gives the spectators an opportunity of seeing from the stand, the starting, as well as the coming in of the horses, and this, at some of our great country meetings, is as much an object of amusement to them, as the running is of interest and consequence to the men of business. At Newmarket, where they do not run heats, and where they seldom run long lengths, most of the courses are straight, or nearly so, which renders them much less difficult to run over, than a round course, both for the horses and jockeys. All the horses trained at Newmarket, stand

in or adjacent to the town, which is a great advantage; for as I have already noticed, horses give their races more kindly in running to their stables, than in running from them.

But with respect to the making of race-courses, they are sometimes made in the form of the figure 8, or of any other figure that may be convenient, of from one mile to four; fortunately, however, a course not exceeding a mile in extent is not very frequently met with. There are too many turns in a round course of this length. A long striding horse running on such a course is too frequently turning, or if the turns are but few, they are mostly difficult for such a horse to make at his best pace. The little or middle-sized hearty horse, that is a pretty round goer, has a short but quick stride, gives his race kindly, is easily held, and is ready at his turns, is the sort of horse most likely to come first on such a course. Indeed, a large long striding horse, and more particularly a free runner, cannot be got to run in his best form, with safety, round so small an extent of ground as a mile. The owner would be a bad judge who would bring his horse to post, to run on so small a course.

In making a two mile round course, the first thing to be considered, after having surveyed the ground, is, whether the horses shall have to run to the right hand or to the left. This will depend on the most advantageous way the ground can be chosen. Should there be a very steep piece of ground, in any part of it, and more particularly should it be in that part where strong

running might likely be made, or, where perhaps with some horses it were proper to be made, to run up such ground would be preferable to running down it, and it would be giving an equal chance to different descriptions of horses; for the greatest part of the ground of a two mile course is mostly flat, which, when not too deep, is an advantage to the long striding horse; but if there is a pretty good hill in it to ascend, the little close made horse, if he has good action, can generally climb it the best; and if by making a course to run to the left hand, we avoid running down a very steep hill, it would be preferable to have it go in the above direction.

I have already observed with regard to running over a two mile course, that the post the horses start from, is also the winning post; but in order to decide correctly the coming in of the horses, a second post is necessary, and this must be placed immediately opposite, or in a parallel line with that behind which the judge stands; as one of the principal objects in placing this post here, is, its being a fixed point to enable the judge to decide accurately on the smallest part of that horse's head which may first appear in a line with these two posts. The post I have here mentioned may be called the starting, the winning, or the weighing post: as on a two mile course it answers all these purposes. It is to be observed, that in fixing the above two posts, they are to be so situated on the course, as to divide the best part of the ground into two portions: one of these portions of ground is for the start, the

other, which is of far more importance, is for the horses to run in upon. This part of the course should be straight and level; if it deviates at all from the latter it should be in a gradual ascent to the winning-post. The whole of the posts for marking out the ground should be painted white, and must be placed at such convenient distance one from the other, as to admit of each being easily seen by the jockeys in the running; and to prevent them from getting too close to the large posts, the better way is to bank them up from a pretty wide basis, for three or four feet, as advised in the Racing Calendar by the Stewards of the Jockey Club; and for any particular purpose for which a post may be intended, independently of its use in marking out the ground, such post should be marked accordingly on the top part; for example, when shorter lengths than two miles are to be run.

Supposing the course I am now arranging to run to the right hand, and that there may be rather a difficult turn to make in it. Instead of such a turn being made by the jockeys' laying a little out of their ground sufficiently early for the purpose of making it, as was formerly the practice, and which was not only dangerous, but has often been the cause of disputes on the subject of foul riding, I would recommend the adoption of the following plan, which would not only prevent accidents, but every thing unpleasant which may occur in running for the turn in the old way. The turn had better be made by an additional number of sight posts, which should be placed wide of such turn, sufficiently

early, so as gradually to form and enlarge the sweep the whole of the way round as much as possible. Making a turn in this way will not only be much safer, and prevent disputes, but it will be giving a more equal chance to the very light weights, who are many of them boys, and who are not so experienced in running for a sharp turn, as some of the older jockeys. An experienced jockey coming well placed to a turn, and having the whip hand, would not, perhaps, feel much delicacy, when in running for it, to lay a young inexperienced jockey boy a little out of his ground here, the old one knowing that half a length got here, is worth two or three in straight running.

I believe, on all courses, there is generally plenty of room for any reasonable number of horses to run abreast ; but in the running between the rails, as we here form the breadth ourselves, we should take care to have a clear space between them of twenty-five yards. These rails, on each side the course, should commence at least a quarter of a mile below the winning-post, and should be continued two or three hundred yards beyond it. Indeed, the further the rails are continued on all courses, the better.

At such racing meetings as are numerously attended by spectators, there is generally a space of ground of about ten or a dozen yards in width, and about one hundred or two in length, railed in on the right and left of the course for people on foot. This is a very good plan, as it protects them from the horsemen and carriages. In coming in on the right of the course,

there should be two distance posts; the first of these posts is to be erected two hundred and forty yards from the winning-post—the second a hundred and twenty from it. The first of these posts is the distance-post, when the horses are running four miles; the second, when they are running two miles.

Attached close to, and in the rear of the winning-post, should be a small wooden stand, erected for the judge to stand in to decide which horse comes first in the race. There should be to each of the distance posts a similar but a more temporary sort of stand. Each of these temporary stands may be made by putting two posts at a suitable distance in the rear of each distance-post, with a piece of board in the centre; but this board at each of these posts should be two or three feet higher than the floor of the judge's stand, so that the man in the distance stand may clearly see the winning-post, and be ready to drop the distance-flag immediately with that at the winning-post.

The stand, or as it is sometimes called, the grand stand, which is erected for the accommodation of the spectators, is generally placed on the right of the course. The under part may be conveniently arranged for the vending of refreshments. It should be built at a distance of from twenty to five and twenty yards in the rear of the rails of the course. The end of this stand need not be in a direct line with the winning-post, but may come within about ten yards of it. The height and dimensions of such stand must, of course, depend very much on the extent or importance of the meeting held

in the neighbourhood. Close up to, and in a parallel line with the rails of the course, and opposite the centre of the grand stand, should be erected a small round building, eighteen feet in circumference, clear of the walls, which should be eighteen feet high. This building being divided by a floor in its centre, the lower part is for a weighing house, (the door of which should face the stand), the upper part is for a stand for the stewards, for whose convenience a communication may be made by a staircase out of the weighing-house, and on the roof there should be a bell to ring for saddling. In the centre of the weighing-house, the scales and weights should be placed. It is the case, at most of our principal meetings, and it should be so at all of them, that one scale should be made in the form of a chair, and suspended the same height from the ground as the seat of a chair would be, with a half back, made round in the form of an arm chair; and an iron triangle of proper dimensions should be fixed to the end of the beam, for the purpose of keeping the ropes that are attached to the beam sufficiently extended upon top so as not to interfere with the jockey's head when he is weighing. This would be much more convenient, as he could more readily sit down in this scale, take his saddle and trusses in his lap, and weigh with more dispatch and with less difficulty than with scales put up in the common way. There should be seats round the walls of this weighing-house, and pegs for the jockeys to hang their clothes on. Cupboards would also be convenient here, to hold the trusses and small

weights, as occasion may require; for there are many jockeys at several of our country meetings who are employed to ride for a variety of masters, and sometimes, different races for their first or principal masters, which obliges them to vary their weights, and occasionally to shift them from one saddle to another. When the weights do not run high, and a jockey can come to the weight himself, dead weight of course is not wanted. The trusses and small weights, belonging to different trainers, are then left in the care of one of their boys, or any convenient person who may be near at the moment; perhaps they are thrown down in the weighing-house, and are thereby liable to be mislaid or lost; or, not unlikely, some of the shot may be taken out of them. Racing is now become a game of such importance to men of business on the turf, that nothing which regards it should be done in an uncertain, idle, or slovenly manner. These trusses and small weights, when not in use, should therefore be given in charge of the man who attends the scales; by him they should be locked up in the cupboards, and he should be made accountable for them to the different persons to whom they may belong.

The space between the weighing-house and the grand stand is to be formed into a yard, enclosed by rails about four feet high. This enclosure should extend ten feet beyond each extremity of the front, observing to leave the gateways in the positions as marked in the plan of the course; that near the judge's

stand is for the jockeys to ride their horses through to get to the scales to weigh ; and that near the stand, for the horses to pass through in going to the rubbing-house.

By closing the gates here, after the horses are rode into the yard, the people on foot would be prevented from passing in and crowding round the horses, which they are apt to do while the riders are weighing. It may be advisable at such meetings as commence early in the spring, or late in the autumn, to cover this yard with a mixture of gravel and sand, which would make it more firm and dry to walk on, in case of much wet. The ground thus fenced in, I shall call the weighing-yard, into which none should be admitted but people of business, such as the stewards of the races, noblemen and gentlemen who own the horses, the trainers, the jockeys, and the boys who look after them.

The weighing house and yard being situated and arranged in this way, mistakes cannot possibly happen, if the jockey does not keep on his horse's back after having pulled him up at the conclusion of the heat or race, until he gets to scale, as in going off the course to weigh he must come to and pass by the ending or winning post. Indeed it would be unpardonable in a regular jockey to dismount until he has rode his horse past this post in going to the scales. A jockey who is in high practice of riding, is too good a judge to allow such a thing to happen to him, let the scales be placed in whatever situation they may. If he were so unfortunate, through absence of mind, as to commit an

error of this kind, I much fear it would be at the expence of his character; but a gentleman jockey, on a strange course, and who may not have rode many races, may unintentionally fall into an error of this sort, if not directed by the trainer who puts him up how he is to proceed when he has pulled up his horse. From want of experience or caution, a gentleman may make this mistake, either by not riding his horse back to the ending post previous to his dismounting to weigh; or, he may, if his orders are not to run for the first heat, pull up within the distance, and if the scales should be placed (as they often are) inside of the winning post, he may, without giving it a thought, ride to them, dismount, and weigh, without even coming to the ending-post; he would, consequently, be distanced: but as I have observed, from the way in which the weighing-house and the entrance to it are here arranged, nothing of this sort can possibly happen, if the rider will but keep on his horse's back until he gets to the scales.

The ropes which are to be put up across the course at the commencement of the rails, to shut out people on horseback who have no business on this part of the course, should be attended by very steady men, who are to take care to be ready to remove the ropes at the time of the horses' starting and coming in.

After the meetings are over, it will be necessary to have chains put up here, and secured by locks, to prevent horses and carts from going over this part of the ground.

If the ground be diversified with ascents and descents at moderate intervals in a course of two or four miles, I think it rather an advantage, as it gives an equal chance to the little stout horse as to the large long striding horse. Generally speaking, they all give their races more kindly over such ground, than they would do in running a similar length over a dead flat.

The next thing to notice relative to a course is the rubbing-house, or as it is called by some, the saddling-house, being used for both purposes. This building should be erected at a distance of about two or three hundred yards beyond the weighing-post. It will here be somewhat out of the noise and bustle of the crowd, and it will be near to where the horses pull up after sweating or running.

The walls of this building should be in height, from the surface of the ground, twelve feet, by sixty-four in length, and the space between them, from eighteen to twenty feet. The stalls in this building should be eight feet wide, to give sufficient room to the boys to work on each side of the horses after they have been sweating, and at the time of their being saddled to run. The partitions between the stalls should also be sufficiently high so as to prevent the horses from smelling to each other over them, but there is no necessity for either racks or mangers in any of these stalls. The walls in front of the horses' heads should be boarded, and rings should be fixed there to tie horses up occasionally. Now, as it frequently happens that there are horses from different stables not only going to sweat

on the same morning, but most likely at the same time, (as training stables are sometimes at so great a distance from the ground as not to allow of the horses being conveniently scraped at home, and as it would be unpleasant to the trainers for the horses of different stables to scrape at the same time in one rubbing-house), I think the better way would be to divide these eight stalls, by running up a wall in the centre, and thus making two rubbing-houses with four stalls in each, and with doors of the same dimensions as those in the training stables; and for the admission of plenty of air and light, there should be two large windows in each of these houses, and they should be on the same plan as the lower part of those windows in the training stables. (*See plate.*)

In the front of this building there should be a piece of ground twelve feet in breadth by the length of the building, walled in to the height of four feet and a half, with rings placed at proper intervals in the walls, for the trainers and riders to tie up their hacks while the horses are being scraped or saddled. The door is to be in the centre of this yard, and to be five feet in width.

The subject which next presents itself, as being immediately connected with the preceding one, is that of the appointment of gentlemen to act as stewards of the races, and the duties which devolve upon them. I believe it is customary, at country races, for the stewards of the preceding year to nominate their successors, which, I presume, is intended as a compliment

to the gentlemen who may be selected from among the nobility and gentry of distinction in the neighbouring country where the meetings are held. It sometimes happens, that gentlemen are appointed who are not thoroughly acquainted with all the rules of racing. Now for the information of such, and in order that the business of the day may go smoothly on, I will here give as brief and as correct a sketch as I am able, of such rules and orders as they may be required to see carried into effect: but with regard to the arrangement of the duties emanating from the evening assemblies, when the gentlemen have to divide equally their polite attention in matching the young ones to sport the light fantastic toe in the dance, and in placing the aged ones at the card table to a quiet rubber, to play the severities of the game for the odd trick, I must beg to decline interfering. This important part of the stewards' duties I leave to the better taste and judgment of the gentlemen themselves.

The stewards of racing meetings should give their orders in due time, for the making of such regulations relative to the course, as they may conceive most advantageous. They should fix the hour the horses are to start, and they are accountable that all funds run for in the meeting are paid before the horses start. To the stewards, the gentlemen of the turf, the betters, trainers and jockeys, all look up, to decide correctly on any disputes which may arise. They should therefore be in the stand appropriated for them during the time the horses are running; and they should here observe

as far as they possibly can, any thing incorrect that may occur,—such as foul riding; or a race may be claimed by the owner of the second horse, from other causes. Their attention and observations here may materially assist them in deciding disputes, which (as recommended by the stewards of the jockey club) should be immediately settled, since the witnesses may easily be assembled, and in the weighing-yard, with the gates closed, they may, unmolested by the crowd, hear the evidence on each side relative to the dispute in question, and give their final decision on the spot.

The next person to be mentioned, is the clerk of the course, who is to act entirely under the direction of the stewards, and whose duty it is to carry such of their orders into execution as may be entrusted to him. He should be a respectable, well conducted man, and intelligent in the common rules of racing; as at many country meetings, with a view of giving as little trouble as possible to the stewards, the clerk's situation becomes a place of trust. He is often commissioned to receive and hold the whole or part of the funds, such as the subscriptions to the plates and stakes, and entrance money, the money collected at the stand, and the fees for the weights and scales, all of which he is to be accountable for to the stewards. The horses are generally named to the clerk of the course; he should therefore, in due time, be put in possession of the rules and articles of the plates, stakes, and matches that are to be run for at the meeting. He should make himself thoroughly acquainted with all these things, as on the

day appointed for the horses to shew and enter, he is to see that every horse is duly qualified, agreeably to the articles and rules as to age and pedigree, for whatever he is going to start, according to the certificates produced. He is to be accountable that the course is in all respects in proper order for the horses to run over on the day the meeting commences; he must procure such men as are necessary to be in attendance during the meeting, and place them in their different situations on the course: viz.—The man who starts the horses,—the man who is judge to decide on the running,—the men who attend the scales,—the men who are to attend to the ropes at each end of the rails, and such other men as may be necessary to keep the course clear during the time the horses are running.

Several of the rules which I have here set forth, relative to the duties to be performed by the stewards and clerks of country races, are by order of the stewards of the jockey club, mentioned in the Racing Calendar, from which book I have taken some of them. My reason for having done so, is, that should this work meet the approbation of that part of the public for whom it is principally intended, it may, in some measure, become a book of reference for those of my readers, who may have much occasion for it, and for them I should wish it to contain such useful information as I conceive is absolutely necessary.

I believe I have now noticed every thing relative to such training and running ground, which I conceive best adapted for the purpose of training and running

horses upon; yet I am fully aware it will often happen that from local circumstances, such advantages as I have here pointed out—as to the extent and variety of the downs—cannot at all times be obtained; yet from what I have stated on this subject, I hope I have been sufficiently explicit to enable those who may not be in very high practice in training horses, to form a more general and perfect opinion on the subject, and which may give them the capacity of properly selecting such parts from inferior ground as may suit their purpose.

CHAPTER XII.

ON SADDLE HORSE GROOMS AND BOYS.

In most of the publications on the subject of horses I have had an opportunity of perusing, much has been said of the want of education in grooms. Some authors go so far as to say, they are very ignorant of the management of horses. How far these gentlemen are competent to judge on this latter point, I shall not presume to say.

It is very true that grooms, generally speaking, are not very highly educated; nor am I aware that to get horses into condition requires a very cultivated mind. I have known very good training grooms that could neither read nor write (I have lived under such men); and, notwithstanding their misfortune in not possessing either of these very useful acquirements, they were good practical training grooms; that is, so far as regarded the working and feeding of their horses. Having lived in various stables, I have had an opportunity of ascertaining their abilities in this particular, and I

am quite convinced that they knew very well what they were about. As the authors to whom I have alluded seem to be of opinion that grooms are so very ignorant of the management of horses, and as they have been at some pains to abuse them, I think it would have been but fair had these gentlemen given in their writings, such rules, relative to the condition and treatment of horses, as would, in some measure, have guided those poor ignorant men, and particularly those among them who train race-horses. But no—it does not appear, in any of their works which I have read, that those authors have done much in this respect for these poor fellows, beyond that of recommending them to keep their horses in cold stables. This part of their advice I shall, by and bye, endeavour to prove is not only unnecessary, but that, when thoroughbred horses (which have originated in a hot climate) are to be got into racing condition, it is requisite that they should be kept in a stable of a certain temperature of heat.

It is more than probable, that some authors who have written on the subject of horses, may have been led to form their opinions from observations made in different saddle-horse stables, when they have been called in to give their professional advice; and I have no doubt, that they have often seen very improper management in such stables, and which may have led them to give their opinions rather too indiscriminately of grooms in general.

The late Mr. White, Veterinary Surgeon, of Exeter,

published a very useful work (as far as I am capable of judging of its merits), on the nature and treatment of the various diseases to which the horse is liable; and he has also laid down what he calls "principles" for getting horses into racing, or other condition.

Digressing a little from the present subject, I will, with all due submission to this author's judgment, take the liberty of quoting a passage or two from his work, on "*condition*," merely to see how far his principles can practically be carried into effect, in the training of race-horses, since it appears to me, that were they to be put into practice without being more fully explained, they would be likely to lead those who adopted them into error; and this it is which has induced me to make my remarks on this subject, and not, by any means, with the desire of detracting from the merit of the author.

In the first volume of the work (page 227) the author defines the word *condition*. In page 248 of the same volume, he says—

"When, therefore, we undertake to get a horse into condition, it is necessary first to enquire for what kind of labour he is designed; whether it be for the turf, the chase, or the road. A horse, provided he is in health, may have his condition and wind brought to the highest state of perfection it is capable of, merely by judicious management, in respect to feeding, exercise, and grooming; and notwithstanding the great mystery and secrecy affected by those who make a business of training race-horses, I will venture to

affirm, that it is a very simple process, and easily to be accomplished by any one who will attentively consider the principles we shall lay down, and not suffer himself to be influenced by an ignorant groom."

Again the author goes on to state, in the same volume (page 254)—

"By thus gradually bringing a horse from a state of nature, that is, from the open air and green food to a comfortable stable and dry grain, he will be in little danger of those troublesome diseases which are often the consequence of sudden changes, and a different kind of management; and by duly proportioning his exercise to the nutriment he receives, and by gradually bringing the muscular system to that degree of exertion for which the animal is wanted, there is no doubt that his wind, strength and activity, and general condition, will be brought to the highest state of perfection it is possible of attaining."

I think these two extracts tend to shew that the author considered himself quite equal to the task of training horses for the turf. In the conclusion of the first extract, he decidedly states this. In the second, he cannot have meant any thing else (for it is to be observed he is writing on the "condition" of horses) when he stated, "the horse will be brought to the highest state of perfection he is capable of attaining;" and this, I presume, is certainly a state of condition in which a horse should be to race.

Now, my gentle reader, should you be a tolerable judge of the subject under consideration, proceed

quietly on with me, and all I ask of you is, just to make your observations on the principles the author has given us; for, if I mistake not, he affirms, "that any man who will attentively consider them, may train horses for the turf." Well, then, let us again quote, from the author's work, such of his principles as appear to be connected with the subject of "condition." We shall then be able to form some idea how far we may be likely to succeed in getting a horse into racing form, by adopting them.

First, I shall commence with the author's reasons for physicking horses on their being brought from the fields into the stables (page 252).

"When a horse has been taken from grass about a week, I think it advisable to give him a very mild purgative, such as No. 1 (*see physic*). Not that I am convinced of its being absolutely necessary, but because it cannot do any harm; and if the horse has been fed too liberally, or not exercised enough, or should the stomach or bowels be out of order, or have any worms in them, a mild purgative will be of great service. It is on this ground that I always recommend two or three doses of mild physic during the time a horse is getting into condition."

Now, in the above paragraph, we find the author advising physic to be given as a preventitive to disease; he also thinks it advisable to give a mild purgative to a horse after he has been taken from grass about a week; "not that he is convinced of its being absolutely necessary, but because it cannot do any harm."

However, to make further remarks on the author's reasons for giving physic to horses to assist in getting them into condition, will not in any way benefit my readers. There are certainly two causes for giving physic on those occasions—I believe, not more than two—yet our author has not been pleased to notice either of them, in any part of his treatise on "condition."

Now, it is but fair to presume, that if the author had been acquainted with the two causes (which are stated in the preceding chapters on that head) for giving physic, and the advantages to be derived from its effects in getting horses of a certain description into racing condition, he would have mentioned them. But he tells us, in the commencement of page 252—"As the horse's allowance of oats is increased, so should his exercise be; and if this be properly managed, there will be no absolute necessity for bleeding or medicine."

Thirdly (p. 254), is the author's advice relative to what kind of exercise is proper to bring a horse into condition; and from the manner in which he has concluded the latter part of the following paragraph, I presume he means also grooming.

"During the first week of the horse's being taken into a stable, walking exercise is most proper; but after this, it may be gradually increased to a trot, or a canter; and if the exercise occasions any degree of perspiration, he should be carefully cleaned, and otherwise attended to, as soon as he gets into the stable."

The principles the author has laid down in his

writings, as a guidance for grooms to get horses into racing condition, are, I think, much too laconic. He merely says, "as the horse's allowance is increased, so should his exercise be augmented;" and by proportioning the latter to the nutriment the horse receives from the former, his condition will be brought to the highest state of perfection.

This, generally speaking, is all very true; and we are well aware, that from whatever cause a horse goes off his feed, his work must be stopped. Nothing can be done with him, in regard to condition, unless he is sound, in perfect health, and takes his usual allowance both of food and water. Yet, notwithstanding this, there are a variety of circumstances, under which horses are to be exercised; and as this is one of the main objects we have to attend to in getting horses into high condition, it is much to be lamented that our author has not been more explicit. In page 254, the author gives something, by way of rules, as to exercise and grooming. In speaking of the former, he tells us, as I have already observed, that walking exercise is most proper; but after this, it may be gradually increased to a trot or a canter, and if the exercise occasions any degree of perspiration, the horse should be carefully cleaned, and otherwise attended to as soon as he gets into the stable.

Now, it is to be observed that there are three sorts of exercise necessary for race-horses that are in training, and that have to run pretty long lengths; they are to walk, to gallop, and to sweat, as occasion

may require. But, in the rules which the author has given us, he only makes mention of the former of these exercises, and, even here, he does not point out the advantages horses will derive from its effects; he only observes, "that walking exercise is the most proper for the first week," and after this period, he tells us it may be increased to a trot or a canter. These few words are the commencement and conclusion of his rules for exercising horses in order to get them into high condition. Immediately following, are our author's direction for grooming. He says, when speaking of the exercise which he recommends, "Should it occasion any degree of perspiration, the horse should be carefully cleaned, and otherwise attended to, as soon as he gets into the stable." The above few lines appear to be all the directions the author has given us in his writings relative to exercising and grooming horses. They are certainly very harmless, and may be sufficient to keep some horses in health: but they are of much too feeble a nature to be of any particular use in the getting of strong horses into any thing like racing form. Yet the author appears to have written on the subject of "condition" with great confidence; for, in his second volume (page 218), he again gives the definition of the word "condition," and further tells us that this subject has been *fully* treated on in the "Compendium." I have attentively read the whole of the author's statement (which is not more than forty-two pages) on the "condition" of horses, and from them I have quoted such parts as I think are

at all connected with the subject. The precautionary measures he has given us on horses being brought from a state of nature into an artificial one, are, I think, very proper, and should, at all times, be carefully attended to. The principle which the author has laid down for our guidance, namely,—"that as horses feed and drink, so should their work be regulated," is, to a certain extent, correct, and is commonly known to all men connected with the turf, and indeed to most other men who keep horses. But, without some more practical or definite rules, it would be next to an impossibility for any person to train race-horses so as to bring them in a fit state to run with horses trained by regular training grooms. Yet this is what the author, in his first volume (page 248), affirms can be done. However, those gentlemen who are inclined to train horses by his rules and regulations, may make the trial; but I cannot help thinking, that, should their horses be valuable ones, and heavily engaged, they would be likely to pay rather dear for such experiment.

But to return again to grooms. It is very well understood that the word "groom" is the name applied to a man who looks after horses which are rode by their owners for pleasure; and if a man be sober, honest, attentive to his business, and clean in his person, one groom is considered, by the greater part of the public, just as good as another. This conclusion is erroneous; for, the knowledge which any one of them may possess in a greater degree than another, as

a stable-man, will very much depend on what stables he may have been brought up in, or rather, the description of horses he may have been accustomed to have placed under his care. According to the different purposes for which pleasure-horses are employed, so must their condition be varied. Race-horses are to be treated differently from hunters, and hunters differently from saddle-horses. Such men as are termed saddle-horse or pad grooms, are those who, in the commencement of their career, may be found to have been living as boys, in livery and horse-dealers' stables, in London, and many of our principal towns. In those stables, they obtain such knowledge in regard to the cleaning and riding of horses, as brings them somewhat familiar with the animal. This knowledge enables them, as they approach the state of manhood, to undertake the mechanical care (if I may be allowed the expression) of such saddle-horses as they may be engaged to look after. These grooms merely give food and water to horses at stated periods in the course of the day, clean them, and keep them well clothed, and when their masters do not ride the horses out, give them such exercise as they think necessary to keep them in health. If such horses appear tolerably fresh, kind in their skins, and clean on their legs, they are considered by the grooms, as also by their masters, to be in excellent condition, and, for most of the purposes for which they are intended, they may be so: indeed, some of them may be in *good* condition, which I will account for hereafter. These saddle-horse grooms know no-

thing of the condition of horses, farther than what I have here stated; at least, those of them who are bred up as I have here described; they are not capable of bringing a hunter into a fit state to go a hunting, and as to their getting a race-horse into a fit condition to run, is quite out of the question. However, to do justice to grooms in general, and to prevent any inconvenience which might arise from an ignorance of the proper department in which each groom should be respectively placed, I shall divide these men into three different classes.

Instead of the saddle-horse or pad groom, the stud groom is the first I ought to have described; but as it is my intention, at some future period, to write on the subject of breeding horses, as well as on the management and condition of hunters generally, I shall, for the present, decline entering into a description of the qualifications necessary for the grooms above mentioned to possess.

CHAPTER XIII.

ON TRAINING GROOMS AND EXERCISE BOYS.

In most trades and professions, men have a peculiar manner of expressing themselves, in ordering or arranging any thing in their business. In this respect, training grooms and jockeys may be said to make use of a language exclusively their own, and which may not be generally understood by many of my readers; therefore, whenever I make use of any phrase such as is used on the turf, I shall, if I see it necessary, accompany the same with an explanation.

I now come to speak of the training groom. It is highly requisite that I should enter into a very accurate description of this man; for it is of the utmost importance to every nobleman and gentleman on the turf, that a man undertaking the management of race-horses, should be thoroughly acquainted, not only with every thing relating to the business of training them to run, but he should know how to guard against accidents, and give the necessary orders how the horses are to be

rode in their different races, according to the constitution and temper of each particular horse. Therefore, to enable my readers to judge how well qualified a man may be to take charge of a large racing establishment, I shall here give the gradual rise and progress of a man of this description, from the time of his entering the stables, which, if he is to become a good training groom, he should do at the age of twelve or fourteen at latest.

As the men who train horses are sometimes the jockeys who ride them, the lighter such men are, the less they will have to punish and sweat themselves; consequently they are stronger on horseback, which is a matter of importance when they have to ride craving horses, and have often to cut the work out with them, or, in other words, to make the play. Sometimes, on such occasions in country running (although not so often now as formerly), they have to ride two, three, or four, four-mile heats; to do which, require a man to be not only of a strong constitution, but in tolerably good condition, as such horses often require a great deal of perseverance on the part of the jockey, to get their races out of them, in coming such long lengths. If a jockey is drawn too fine by wasting, he will be in too delicate a state to render his horse the necessary aid in running required of him. Under such circumstances, or indeed, under most others applicable to grooms and jockeys, it is necessary to make choice of such boys as are of small features, and whose parents were of low stature. If the boys are coarse and bony-

limbed, with large hands and feet, and their parents were of tall stature, they can seldom be made jockeys; they no sooner acquire a knowledge of their business, and become useful to their employers, than they get too big and too heavy to ride young ones in strong work, or indeed, any sort of race-horse, and a groom is often obliged to discharge such boys on this account.

If boys were invariably chosen as I have recommended, it would, I think, be by far the best plan, for training grooms who have under their charge a large and permanent racing establishment, to have these boys articled to them. They could not then so readily go away when they thought proper, leaving the groom quite at a loss how to supply the place of a boy, who may have been looking after a horse difficult both to ride and to clean. Another disgraceful practice would thereby be put a stop to,—that of one groom enticing a good riding boy away from another, which, I am sorry to say, was formerly by no means an uncommon occurrence; an attempt having twice been made to entice me away from stables when a boy. But the grooms of the present day are, I hope, above all such mean and unfair practices. Good riding boys in a training stable, I may say are invaluable; in fact, there is no training horses properly without them. I shall, therefore, enter minutely into the subject of how they are to be taught their duty, both as regards riding the horses when at exercise, as well as the attention which is necessary to be paid to them in the stables.

It is tolerably well understood, that boys are, more or less, inclined to be tricky ; nor are those in race-horse stables different from the generality in this particular. They are often in the habit of playing each other a variety of mischievous little dirty tricks, which, of course, are not of much consequence : but some boys, when not strictly watched, are apt at times, to practise rather dangerous tricks on the horses they look after, and in which, I confess, I have often been an accomplice ; and, as I have reason to suppose human nature has not much changed since, I shall, as I proceed, make mention of such of them as I think necessary, to put those grooms who may not have been brought up in training stables at a very early period, on their guard. I know some men, who did not begin to train horses until they were some way advanced in years, and to such, these hints may be found useful.

I expect training grooms teach their boys to ride much in the same way now as they formerly did, being fully aware that they are, at times, necessitated to put up their best riding boys to ride their light weights, when jockeys cannot be had, or when these cannot perhaps get themselves down to the weight. Under these and other circumstances, it used to be the custom with most grooms, to caution and instruct their boys at the time of their riding different horses in their gallops and sweats, and more particularly in the concluding of the latter ; at which time it generally is that the trainer is endeavouring to ascertain the length of rally that a craving or hearty horse (but not a flighty one) can

live or come home in, at pretty near the top of his pace. Unless a trainer ascertains this fact, he would be rather posed, as to what orders he should give his jockey, how the horse he may have been training is to run,—whether the jockey is to make play, or wait with him; or, if neither of these, to what part of the course he is to keep his place with the company he is in, until he comes to that part of it whence the length of rally commences in which he knows his horse can come well home. And very requisite it is for the trainer to know this, and which all the best riding boys ought to be taught, while they are riding different horses in their exercise; for instructions on these points would be ill-timed at the moment they are being put up to ride in a race. They have enough to do, on those occasions, to observe the orders given them, how the horses they are put on are to be rode in the race.

I shall now endeavour to teach an exercise boy how to ride, much in the same way I was taught by the different head lads and grooms whom I lived under when I was a boy similarly circumstanced.

When a young boy is first put to look after a horse, and ride him in his exercise, with a view to give the boy confidence, the horse should be one that is tolerably quiet both to ride and to dress, and should have been some time in training; so that with little trouble he will keep his place in the gallop, make a run at the end with the other horses, and afterwards be pulled up easily. The stronger work such a horse is in, the less likely he is to be calfish, or to give the boy, what is

commonly termed in the stables, a calf,— in other words, he will be less likely to throw him. This is the sort of horse a young boy should be put to look after. Such boy should be instructed in every thing appertaining to the taking care of a horse, as to the manner of feeding, dressing, clothing, &c., by an elder hand, who is well acquainted with his business.

The time of teaching a boy to ride, is, of course, when the horses are at exercise. As race-horse stables are mostly on or near the ground on which the horses are trained, it is the custom (and a very excellent one it is) before the groom sets his horses on their legs (by giving them a short gallop) to order the boys to walk them, at a proper distance from each other round a large circle, that they may stretch their legs, and empt themselves before they commence their gallops.

It is generally during this period that the groom gives his orders to the different boys, according to circumstances, how they are to go with their horses, as to their length and pace, and the different sorts or parts of ground they are to go on; but he seldom troubles himself with the first rudiments of a young boy's riding, that being generally left to the head lad.

Let us now suppose a string of race-horses to be clothed up, turned round in their stalls, with the boys on them, ready to go out to exercise. Before they start, the head lad gives his instructions to the young boy; he arranges the length he is to ride in his stirrups, by making him stand up in them, and leaning his body forward, with his fork over the pummel of the saddle;

his breeches being loose, should just lightly brush the top of it as he is directed to move his body forward and backward. This length answers the purpose well enough at first, until the boy gets more inured to the habit of riding; he will then exercise his own judgment in this respect. The bridle-reins are knotted at a well-proportioned length, so as to enable the boy to have a very firm hold of the horse's head, whenever he finds such to be necessary. He should now be directed to sit upright, but well down in his saddle, keeping his knees and the calves of his legs tightly pressed to its flaps; his toes should be as much turned in and up as the hold with his knees and the calves of his legs will admit; and with his feet rather forward, he should have a pretty firm hold of his stirrups. He is to be told the distance he is to keep from the horse in front of him.

He is next to be directed almost invariably to keep his hands well down; more particularly when the horse is going up his gallop, they must be well down on each side the horse's withers. The boy's hands thus placed give him some support against the horse whenever he feels inclined to pull, nor is he to move his hands from this position (walking exercise excepted) unless to take a pull; if the horse should be making too free with himself in the gallop, he may then move his hands to take a pull, or rather, first gradually give with the reins, and take the pull afterwards. By these means the horse's mouth is kept alive, or, in other words, sensible to the pressure of the bit; and thereby the boy is enabled to hold the horse in the gallop, and to pull him up at the

termination of it. But he should be cautioned, that when the horses are making their run at the end of the gallop, as they will sometimes have to do, he is to lay a little out of his ground to the right of the horses in front of him, so that he may have room to pull his horse up gradually, and not balk him of his stride.

A boy, having the above directions clearly laid down to him, and going out occasionally twice a day with the horses to exercise, soon learns (provided he be not a very stupid fellow) how to take a quiet horse up his gallop. When he is seen to sit carelessly on his horse at walking exercise, sitting perhaps on one thigh, and talking to the rest of the boys, there are hopes of his becoming a good rider. The groom observing a boy doing this sort of thing, thinks it will soon be time to take him under his own tuition.

To prepare him for this, he changes him from the quiet horse, and puts him to look after one that is not only more difficult to ride, but in all probability, more difficult to dress (of which I shall have occasion to speak more fully hereafter); perhaps a sort of horse which, in the language of the stable, is termed a hearty one, and which, if not in pretty strong work at the time, will be very likely, when on the downs, to begin his gambols, and of this the groom is aware. He therefore cautions the boy to sit upright on his horse, but firm, and well down in his saddle, and to keep fast hold of his horse's head, that he may not get it down; as a horse of this description, when fresh, seeing the

horses in front of him commencing their gallop, becomes anxious to get away with them, and he is very likely to kick up, or make a bound or two just before he settles in his stride. If he does not give the boy a calf the first time of his riding him, he will not in all probability do it at all; but he will certainly give his rider to understand that he requires some attention paid him, or, more properly speaking, the boy finds he must be on his guard with him, that he must keep a firm seat, or occasionally be very quick in seizing one.

As the groom sees the boy has confidence in himself, and that he can manage the horse I have just described, he should take an opportunity, whenever it is his intention to give three or four horses a good brushing gallop together (perhaps the day before sweating), of putting up this boy to ride one of them, just to give him an idea of pace; or whenever there are a number of horses going a gentle sweat together, then, with a view to get some length of riding into the boy, he should be put up, for a few times, to ride any one of the horses at the tail of the string, that will not want much persevering with to keep him up with the others in going over the sweating ground. This young boy, being light of weight, and thus far forwarded in his riding, the groom is now supposed to put him to ride such of the young ones as may be going into strong work, and he thinks him best capable of holding.

The boy having now been taught a certain portion

of his duty *out* of the stables, the next thing to be done, is to teach him that part of it which it is equally necessary he should perform when *in* the stables; and this will form the subject of the following chapter.

CHAPTER XIV.

ON DRESSING RACE-HORSES.

From the repeated and strict orders which a boy, when first put to look after a race-horse, has given him by the groom and head lad, and from his observations on what he daily sees other boys doing, together with the precise regularity of the stable-hours, &c. he must naturally conclude, in his own mind, that there can be nothing on earth of so much importance as a race-horse; at least, such was my idea when, as a boy, I first entered the stables. Nor is it by any means an improper idea for a boy to entertain. Each boy is made accountable for every thing used about what he calls his own horse, nor does he even give a thought to any other. If caught in the rain when at exercise, he must take care to have his horse's clothes thoroughly dried. If his horse's boots are wet or dirty, they must be also dried, rubbed, and brushed. When

a boy has been taught his duty, he seldom forgets any thing relative to his horse; or if he does, the groom is very likely, with the aid of an ash plant, to refresh his memory in a way not very pleasant to the boy's feelings. The duty he has to perform in the stables with regard to the dressing of his horse, is sometimes as difficult as that which he has to attend to out of them when riding him.

As the dressing of race-horses (generally speaking) differs very materially from that of most of our hunters and hacks, I think it necessary to make a few remarks on the subject. It is to be observed that race-horses, on coming into the stables from their daily exercise, are not in that dirty or sweaty state in which hunters and hacks generally are, unless after sweating and running, (this is another matter, and I shall come to it by and bye); they, therefore, do not require to be worked at by those who look after them with that degree of labour which is so often requisite in cleaning either of the former.

I shall first notice the regular method to be pursued in the dressing of a quiet race-horse. The boy, in coming in from exercise, rides his horse into the stable, turns him round in the stall, dismounts, slacks his girths, takes off his hood, bridle, and boots, unbuckles his breast cloth, turns it and the front part of the quarter-piece back, over the saddle. Having put a bit of hay on the ground for the horse to eat, he commences dressing his head, neck, and fore-quarters; first, by wisping them perfectly clean with a damp

wisp of gardener's matting or hay, and then he uses his brush in the same manner. This being done, he sponges his horse's mouth, nostrils, and eyes, with a damp sponge; and then, with a linen rubber he wipes his horse's head and every part of his forequarters perfectly clean; combs out his mane and fore-top, and giving his ears a few strokes with his hands, he turns him round in the stall, puts on his collar and dressing muzzle, and chains up the horse's head to the cribbing board. The boy, after kicking a sufficient portion of the litter well back, takes his rubber, spreads it on the litter close to his horse's feet, puts into the rubber the dirt which he picks out, and which he afterwards throws into the middle of the stable. He then washes his horse's feet clean, and after having given his legs a few strokes down with some soft straw, he takes off the saddle, and puts it in its place; he then strips his horse, throws the clothes into the manger, or puts them on the top of the rack, and begins (on the off side) to dress his horse's body, first, by wisping him well over, twice on each side. In the same manner he brushes him over on each side, then wisps him again once on each side, wipes him over with the rubber, and finishes on the near side; he then clothes him up, observing to place the wrong side of the pad-cloth up, with a view to keep it clean, as it is sometimes wanted at the time of saddling when the horse is going to run. The horse's hood and woollen rubber are thrown over his loins, as from ranging about in the stall while being dressed, he gets a little

warm; the hood, therefore, is for a short time made use of in this way to prevent the horse from becoming chilly. His mane and tail being combed out, the boy kneels down on the near side of his horse and rubs his legs, first with some soft straw, and afterwards with his hands or a linen rubber. He then sets his bed fair, and the horse is suffered to stand with his head up and muzzle on until he is fed.

This is the manner of dressing a quiet horse; and it is a horse of this description that a young boy should first be put to look after, being directed by the head lad until he knows thoroughly how to do every thing necessary, as far as regards the cleaning of a horse. After which, he may be changed from one horse to another, until he can dress one of a different description.

Race-horses, when they are sufficiently quiet, are dressed as I have above-mentioned; but like other animals, they vary much in their dispositions. There are some of them which are high-couraged, thin-skinned, short coated horses, many of which have to sweat and scrape often. Take what methods we will, some of them have a great aversion to being dressed. They immediately become irritated on the boy's unbuckling the roller to strip them; they kick and lash out and range about in the stall, and do every thing they can to avoid being dressed. A groom or head lad cannot too often caution a young boy to be cool and patient in the dressing of such a horse. Indeed, it requires as much coolness and patience in the dressing

of some horses as in the riding of others, and until a boy has been properly taught and long accustomed to irritable, flighty, and high-couraged horses, he should be strictly watched. When a boy knows how to dress a horse, such as I have here described, and when he can patiently bear with whatever the horse may be inclined to do, without abusing him, he becomes as valuable to the groom in the stable, as a good riding boy is out of it.

In the dressing of such horses, it is necessary to take every precautionary measure we can, to avoid as much as possible making use of anything likely to annoy them. There is seldom or ever any occasion to use a curry-comb about the body of such horses in summer. The only use of the comb at this season of the year is in the cleaning of the brush, which latter is, at almost every stable-hour, in pretty general use; and what is termed a good one in hunting or saddle-horse stables, is made of the best Russian hair, and has been some time in use. This is a sort of brush that few thin-skinned horses can bear to have applied to their bodies. They endeavour all they can to shift from it. Even quiet horses will show their dislike to being brushed over with such brushes, by shifting and ranging about in their stalls. Others of a more irritable disposition I have known to become quite vicious at the time of their being brushed over. One horse may be seen endeavouring to fly at the boy, while another may be observed trying to press the boy with the whole weight of his body against the side of the

stall. A groom may prevent a good deal of this occurring, by not allowing such brushes to be made use of in the stables. Indeed there are many thin-skinned horses which would, in the height of summer, be much better without being brushed over at all, at mid-day stables particularly; wisping them thoroughly with well-damped wisps of garden matting, and afterwards wiping them over with the rubber, putting their clothes straight, combing out their manes and tails, and hand-rubbing their legs for a short time, is all I should recommend being done to them prior to their being fed at mid-day stables.

As it has often fallen to my lot to look after such horses, I shall endeavour to point out the best way to dress them, so as to annoy them as little as possible. Every thing that is done to the quiet horse in dressing him is also to be done (if possible) to the high-couraged, irritable one, but he will not permit its being done exactly in the same manner. Therefore some little stratagem, with good temper and great patience on the part of the boy, is absolutely necessary, to prevent the horse from losing his temper, becoming violent or breaking out in a sweat at the time of dressing.

As I have just observed, some horses of this description are resolutely vicious; they freely use their legs and feet, and are inclined to be rather more familiar with their mouths than is pleasant. They will watch their opportunity, and seize even the boy who looks after them; but this is not, by any means, a common

occurrence. To prevent this, the boy must be careful at all times to secure his horse's head before he attempts to do any thing to him; for example, when the horse comes in from exercise, and has been turned round in his stall for the purpose of having his head dressed and his hood and bridle taken off, the boy, being on his guard, begins by sponging his horse's mouth and nostrils, and having wiped them dry with a linen rubber, he puts on the horse's dressing muzzle, and it may also be necessary to buckle his head up with the pillar-reins (but this is not very commonly required,) before he ventures to dress his head and fore-quarters. Having properly finished both the latter, he turns the horse back in the stall, removes the muzzle for a moment to put on the collar, when the former is replaced, and the horse's head is again chained up to the cribbing-board. His feet and legs being done, his quarters are next to be cleaned; and the way this should be done is very similar to that in which such a horse is generally scraped and rubbed after sweating. The clothes and saddle are not immediately to be taken off his body; the former should be turned back over the latter. The boy is then quietly to set about dressing his horse's quarters, first by working with his wisp. If the horse will not allow him to use it about his sheath, between or inside his thighs, the boy should not be suffered to persevere with it here. He should be directed to lay hold of the horse's hock or tail, and by degrees

try what he can do with a rubber, a soft damp sponge, or his hand; or after he has finished dressing his horse, and has clothed him up, he may then try to clean those parts. I have known some horses, when clothed, stand perfectly quiet to be cleaned about the upper part of their thighs, which would not otherwise allow such being done. The horse's quarters being dressed, that is, wisped, brushed, and wiped over, his saddle and clothes should be taken off; but previously to doing this, it may be advisable to put on his boots, to prevent his injuring his legs by striking them: for it often happens that the horse becomes most irritable when a boy is working at his body; and in ranging about in the stall, as I have before observed, kicking and lashing out with hind legs, pawing, striking, and stamping with his fore legs, a horse will occasionally strike one of his feet against the opposite leg. If he has not boots on to ward off the blow, the leg will swell, which may oblige the groom (although perhaps very inconvenienently) to stop his work, or run the risk of the horse going lame.

Another thing to be observed in a young boy who is not much accustomed to dressing a horse of this description, is his temper. He must be strictly cautioned not to suffer passion to get the better of his reason; if it should, and the groom not be by at the time, he will be very likely to abuse his horse by striking or kicking him in the belly,

or what is very much worse, in the fore legs. It is therefore necessary just at this time to pay the strictest attention to the boy, that he may not do mischief. I have often watched the groom to the lower end of the stable, and then kicked an unruly horse I have been looking after in his fore legs. A boy while dressing a horse of this kind, should have a small ash plant in his hand, but should not strike the horse with it if he can possibly avoid it. Fighting with a horse of this description, in any way, seldom answers. Holding the stick up occasionally, with a view to check him a little, is the better mode; and when the horse makes any attempt to press the boy against the sides of the stall, he has nothing more to do than to push him quietly from him.

The cautions and directions given by a groom to a young boy on his first being put to dress this sort of horse, mostly puts him on his guard; and if he is not very stupid, from his former practice with other horses, he soon finds out at what part of the stall he can safely stand, and judges with great nicety the different lengths of his horse's kicking and lashing out with his hind legs, as well also as his pawing, stamping, and striking with his fore legs.

A boy, looking after a horse of this sort, soon becomes familiar with his tricks; he then generally keeps his temper sufficiently well, so as not to abuse him, which gives the horse confidence in the boy. The

former becomes less mischievous, and the latter less cautious, and after a time they generally agree tolerably well together; nor should the groom part them if he can possibly avoid it, more particularly if the horse is inclined to be resolutely vicious.

CHAPTER XV.

ON THE USE OF DIFFERENT REINS.

There are some race-horses in training, which are not easily held by the very light weights, in plain snaffles or Pelham bridles, and it occasionally happens that some horses are more delicate on their fore legs than others; therefore it does not answer to put up great heavy boys to ride them in their gallops and sweats, more particularly if they require to be in strong work, or are young ones. Therefore, with a view to preserve the legs of such horses, it is necessary to put small boys up to ride them; and to give these boys sufficient power, the groom has recourse to different sorts of reins, or martingals, just according as horses are found to require them. Jockeys, of course, are well acquainted with the use of them. The difficulty lies in getting young, inexperienced boys to use them properly; for, unless repeatedly cautioned, they are apt to pull too resolutely with almost any sort of

bridle, but more particularly when they have an additional rein, by which they can more easily hold or pull up their horses.

For the purpose of properly instructing those light boys in the use of different reins, let us, by way of example, suppose half-a-dozen horses turned round in their stalls with the boys on them, and that the groom is going to give these horses a good brushing gallop. Considering three of these horses to be hard pullers, and to have light boys on them, we will put on each of these horses a snaffle bridle and an additional rein. On the first horse we will put the common martingal and spare martingal rein,—on the second, a gag bit and rein,—and on the third, the martingal running rein. Previous to these horses going out of the stable, the groom gives directions to each boy relative to the rein he has to use. First speaking to the boy who has to ride with the common martingal rein, he says,—"That spare rein you have, is to keep that horse of yours from getting his head up. You had better knot it and let it lay on the horse's neck until you collect your reins. Just before you are going up the gallop, if you find as your horse is going along that he is inclined to get his head up too high for you to get a fair pull at him, then use the rein much in the same manner as with the snaffle rein; that is, give and take with it so as to keep your horse's mouth alive, and occasionally take a long, gradual, steady pull, until you have got his head down and in place. In this quiet way, you will, as

occasion may require, use the rein as your horse is going up the gallop."

To the boy riding with the gag rein the groom says,—"You must knot the rein; or, perhaps, the groom does it himself, telling the boy at the same time the use of it,—"This is to prevent your horse from boring with his head too close to the ground. Be careful how you use it. You had better lay it on your horse's neck until you go up the gallop with him. Then, as soon as you have collected your reins and the horse is settled in his stride, if you find he is getting his head, as usual, too close to the ground, shorten the purchase of this rein and take a gentle pull with it. Thus, by gradually giving and taking with this and the snaffle rein, you will have your horse's head in place, which will enable you to hold him much more easily; and as your horse is not a flighty one, you may, as you find occasion, quietly take this pull, without causing him to alter his stride."

The groom, in giving instructions to the boy who has to ride with the running martingal rein, says,—"In collecting your reins, keep this rein outside the snaffle, and use it much in the same way as you would the snaffle rein, that is, give and take in pulling at your horse, so as to keep his mouth alive, in order that when you want to take a good pull with this rein, it may have the desired effect of bringing your horse's head in place, and enable you to hold him so as to prevent his break-

ing away in the gallop,—or to pull him up at the end of it. For I am of opinion you will find that horse will pull rather resolutely at you, and if he does, as the other horses are increasing their pace, making more free than he ought; and if you think you cannot keep him in his place in the gallop, let him go on with the pace, but do not rattle by close to the other horses, but turn his head off, and go to the bottom of the hill. Keep his mouth alive and let him go a telling pace up it, and as you approach the top, sit you well down and firm in your saddle, with your feet rather forward, and take two or three determined pulls at him with his rein. If you find, from the pace, the hill, and the pull, that he becomes more collected, and that you have sufficient confidence in yourself both to hold and to pull him up, there will be no occasion for you immediately to do the latter. Let him go on with the pace (if you feel inclined) for a mile or more As he proceeds, speak gently to him, take a turn to the right, and go up the short gallop. Having pulled him up at the top of it, turn him to the wind, give him his head, and let him stand for a minute or two, or until he has blown his nose. Then walk him down into the vale, and let him be on the move until I come to you."

These orders, or others tending to the same end, are such as careful training grooms give to young boys on their first riding hard-pulling horses with either of the above reins. As boys improve in riding, they

are occasionally changed from one horse to another, and by riding a variety of horses in their exercise, such boys as can ride well, soon find out how to manage every description of horse they are mounted on, and finish by having little difficulty in holding almost any horse with the aid of proper tackle.

CHAPTER XVI.

ON RIDING A CRAVING HORSE IN HIS SWEAT.

Proceeding with my instructions to the boy in riding, I will suppose him now to have been in the stable for a couple of years. Being a light weight, he has, during this period, been riding such young ones in their exercises and sweats, as the groom may have thought him best capable of managing. In advancing in years, he has become stronger on horseback, and gives promise of being a good jockey.

The groom, aware of the advantage of having such a boy to ride different horses in training, proceeds to give him further instructions, and puts him up to ride such horses in their sweats, as will bring the boy into good riding condition.

It is to be observed, that the boy we are alluding to, already knows, from the practice he has had in riding exercise, how and when to make use of his hands and feet in setting off a horse in his gallop. He also knows how to sit quietly down in his saddle when his horse

is well on his legs and settled in his stride; and from his having rode different young horses, he knows something of the pace a horse is going either in his gallop or sweat. He also knows what strength to apply to the reins in holding his horse, in order to let him go quietly within himself, and not balk him of his stride by pulling at him, but just to have a gentle pull, and to give and take with his reins so as to keep his horse's mouth alive; and if he does this properly, he prevents him from breaking away with him.

A boy being thus forwarded in riding, is next to be put to ride such horses in their gallops and sweats as will, by the exertion which is required of him, rouse them into and rate them at a fair and even pace, and make the boy very strong and determined on horseback. The horses which require to be thus persevered with in their work, are such as are termed craving ones, and to bring some of them through their sweats at the pace they are sometimes ordered to go, is by no means an easy task for the rider, whether he be man or boy; as in their sweats, some of them will hang, and swerve, and lay out of their ground. Indeed, for the time it lasts, it is often very laborious, much more so than riding them in their races; for in their sweats they are not so easily got at, either with an ash plant or wisp, as they are when stripped for running.

When a boy is first put to ride such horses in their sweats, the better way of doing it is to let the head lad ride with a young boy of this class for a few times, on any horse that is stripped or nearly so, that may want

the same length got into him. But it is necessary here to observe, that this horse should be one of a very placid temper, which is generally a horse whose constitution will require him to be sweated once in about eight days. He should be a horse that has a good mouth, is easily held, is kind at his turns, and will patiently wait or readily make way in his sweat, either alone or with any number of horses, (just as he may be called upon by the rider for either,) without becoming alarmed or at all impetuous. Such a horse should also be a kind and superior runner to the craving one, so that when he is called upon to go up and challenge the latter in his sweat, he should do it with ease to himself, that is, he should not be at the top of his mark at the time. Let the rally be of what length it may, he should be going within himself. If this horse is not fast enough, the point may be gained by putting up a lighter weight.

The horses being clothed up, and the orders being given to the head lad by the groom in presence of the boy, how the craving horse is to go in his sweat, as to pace, length, &c., the horses are rode to the ground they are to sweat over. The head lad then desires the boy to set his horse upon his legs, or in other words, to start him off in a canter, and the head lad follows him for a few lengths ; after which he goes close up to the boy's horse, lays his own horse's head in at the other horse's quarters, so as to be able to direct the boy, to whom, probably, the first part of his directions will be, (to use the language of the turf,) " to keep

fast hold of his horse's head and kick him along." By these directions, the boy understands that he is to have a steady pull on his horse, and often to persevere in urging him on with his legs and feet against the horse's sides. They seldom proceed far before the lad sees it necessary to speak again to the boy, (perhaps, rather sharply,) as thus,—"Come, boy, sit well down, get at your horse's head, and twist him along;" meaning by this, that the boy is to sit upright, but well down in the saddle, to raise his hands off his horse's withers, first giving a little to him with the reins, (but they are not to be slack,) and then having a pretty strong hold of his horse's head; giving him two or three good hustles, and persevering at the same time with his hands and feet, he urges the horse on at a better pace.

Now suppose the horse in question to have gone a mile and a half or two miles, whether more or less must depend on what portion of the ground the groom may have given orders for them to come home at a sweating pace. At whatever point this order is to be put in practice, the boy is to be apprised of it at the proper time by the head lad, who again says,—"Come boy, get at your horse, for we must now go a telling pace the whole of the way home." The boy immediately gets himself ready to set-to, and as soon as he has roused his horse into a still better pace, the head lad, in order to continue the craving horse at it, gives a quiet pull at his own horse, and goes up to the other, head and girth. The craving horse being thus challenged, and the boy now and then persevering

with him, continues at the pace for a good length: but if the head lad sees him beginning to hang, and slacken from what he considers a sweating pace, he desires the boy to take a pull, and hustle his horse along. If he still observes the horse does not come, when challenged in this way, being aware that he is a very craving, idle horse, and that unless he is persevered with rather severely, the length cannot be got into him at the pace necessary to get a good sweat out of him, the head lad says to the boy,—"Get up your ash plant, and flourish it near your horse's head, or over your own." And if the horse does not come at a better pace when thus excited to it, the boy is to be told to drop his ash plant smartly down his horse's shoulders or under his belly, either with his left or right hand, for he should be taught to use both equally well. Just at this time, the head lad should make another run, get a little forwarder, let the two horses be head and neck, thus proceeding at a fair telling pace until they are approaching pretty near home, when the head lad should make another run with his horse, getting so far forward as to bring both horses nearly head and head. The advantage given to the craving horse should be about half a head. The boy riding this horse should now vigorously persevere with him, and of whatever length the last rally home may be, he should be pretty near the top of his speed immediately previous to his being pulled up at the end of the sweating ground.

A boy thus instructed, and being often put to ride horses of the above description in their sweats, soon gets

into good riding condition. He becomes not only stout on horseback, but as occasion may require, he becomes very determined in the riding of any craving, idle, or sulky horse; and in setting-to with such horse, he generally succeeds in rousing him out of any sulky tricks, and he is thereby enabled to put the groom's orders strictly into practice, as far as regards how such a horse may have to go in his sweats.

CHAPTER XVII.

ON RIDING A FREE-GOING HORSE IN HIS SWEAT.

Having, in the preceding chapter, given directions for the instruction of a boy how to ride horses which require perseverance to get them along at a certain pace, I will now give the further necessary instructions for riding horses of a different description. The horse I will now make choice of for the boy to ride shall be the one described in the foregoing chapter, supposed to be sweating with the craving one. Therefore, by way of example, I will sweat the same two horses again, with only this difference—that of changing the riders; putting the boy on the kind, free runner, and the head lad on the craving one. The horses having arrived on the sweating ground, the head lad gives his orders to the boy to sit quiet, to keep a gentle pull on his horse, and to follow him. They then set their horses on their legs at a quiet, striding pace. They will most likely not have proceeded far, before

the head lad, looking back, by turning his head over his shoulder, (for he must not move his body on such an occasion,) calls to the boy to take a gentle pull at his horse, and come up with him to his (the head lad's) horse's quarters. The head lad rates his horse a little faster, and the boy's horse, being one of a placid temper, (that is, a sort of horse that will make a race with any thing, as it is called,) patiently waits, and retains his place without any trouble to the boy whatever. Now, to regulate the boy's temper gradually, and to bring him patient in riding a free horse, the head lad, turning his head, should talk to the boy, and point out to him the kind, easy, and free manner the horse he (the boy) is riding, goes in his sweat, compared with the craving one he himself is riding; and how necessary it is for him (the boy) to be very still and quiet on the back of such a horse; also, to observe to him that whenever he wants to make a run with his horse, he has nothing more to do than quietly to lift his hands off his horse's withers, and give him a gentle pull or two, which the horse knows (if he has been well taught as trained) is a challenge for him to make a run for the rally he can easily live in,—a sort of thing the head lad is likely to order the boy to do pretty often, to save himself the labour of persevering with his craving horse.

When these horses which I am supposed to have just ordered to sweat, come to that part of the ground from which horses are sometimes ordered to come home at a sweating pace, the head lad should order

the boy again to take a pull, and come up with his horse, head and girth, with the craving one, and wait there until he orders him to come again head and neck, or head and head. This is more for the purpose of teaching the boy how to challenge a horse to run, than the actual necessity there is for doing it to bring the craving horse through his sweat, for the head lad (if he is any thing like a good one) can mostly do this himself without the boy's aid.

The horses having thus proceeded for a certain length, the head lad may order the boy again to take a pull at his horse, and go half a length in front, to give the boy an idea of making play, or what is commonly called,—"cutting the work out." But he must not be allowed to go too far in front, or he may overmark his horse. As they are concluding the sweat, the head lad should go up to the boy, make run with him home, and finish the sweat at the usual pace, which is mostly regulated according to the state of the ground and the condition of the horses.

The boy, who by this time can ride tolerably well, is becoming very useful to the groom, who often changes him from one horse to another that is more difficult to ride. If the boy is tolerably light, and has a thorough knowledge of the pace which horses are at times to go in their gallops, he is frequently put to lead the gallop, and is also often put to ride such horses in their sweats as require to be resolutely persevered with to get them along.

Having been practised in this sort of riding for

some time, he also begins to understand the pace horses are occasionally to be rated at in this kind of exercise; and when three or four, or half a dozen are going to sweat together, the groom, with a view of giving the boy a still better idea of the thing, is very likely to order him with a horse to go in front, and rate the others in their sweats the whole of the way home, and, perhaps, on a horse the boy may not know much about with respect to his powers, either as to stoutness or speed. If the boy should not know this, he might not only overmark his own horse in the pace, but by so doing he would, in all probability, also occasion one or two of the other horses to tire in their sweats, and in coming home in finishing them, they would be quite abroad and uncollected in their stride. Some horses meeting with repetitions of this sort, will lose their tempers to a certain extent, which may be seen by their becoming alarmed when, on sweating mornings, the sweaters are being put on them.

Now, a good training groom, who has himself been brought up from his boyhood in the stables, is fully aware that those things I have mentioned may happen from the boy's making too free with a horse of which he may, as I have observed, know but little. But the groom, to prevent any thing going wrong, cautions the boy who is supposed to lead the sweat, either in the stable or as he is going along on his way to the ground. He talks to the boy much in the following style (the sweating ground being in good order, and the horses having been for some time in strong work).

Calling him by his name, or perhaps, applying the more familiar epithet "boy," he says,—"As soon as they are well on their legs and settled in their stride, (meaning the horses,) come away with them at a fair even pace until you come to such a place, (naming some land-mark, point, or object well known on the ground). As soon as you get there, take a pull at your horse, keep fast hold of his head, and come with them the whole of the way home at a good sweating pace." The groom, in concluding his orders, says,—"Mind, boy, you do not overmark your horse;" and then he goes on to tell him how he is to proceed in order to guard against so doing. He says,—"Be sure you do not forget, in coming along, to call sufficiently often on your horse, so as to know what he has left in him to come home with them in the last rally."

Now, the boy we have been so long teaching to ride is fully aware of what is meant by the groom's orders, to call on his horse. Having reached that part of the ground whence he is ordered to bring them home at the pace mentioned, he takes a pull at his horse and sets him a-going (the other horses following) for whatever length he thinks proper, or rather, as he finds the pace tells on his horse. If he finds his horse goes freely, collectedly, and within himself, he lets him stride away at the pace he was ordered, if he thinks it is not too fast for the other horses; but the moment he finds his own horse beginning to hang, or not going at the pace kindly as he did at first, he quietly takes a pull and holds him

together for a few strides. After which, he challenges him again, by lifting up his hands and giving him a hustle or two, to ascertain whether he is slackening his pace being rather idle, or whether the pace and the length he is going are telling on him. Now if the boy, by challenging his horse, finds that he immediately and determinedly gets at his usual stride, he thinks, or perhaps he says to himself, (in the language of the stables,) "Oh come, he has got plenty left; I shall hold him fast and let him go," meaning by this, that he will keep a pretty fast hold of the horse's head, and let him go on with the pace. And if he finds the horse maintains his stride with ease to himself, he will most likely not have occasion to challenge him again until he is approaching near home, or perhaps not even then, if he finds he is going well within himself. But if he does not challenge him again, it may be necessary that he should take a quiet pull and hold him together for a few strides, that he may be well ready when called upon to make a run, and bring the whole of the horses home in concluding the sweat, at a good telling pace.

This is the mode in general practice of making play, or rating a horse, so as to run no risk of overmarking him. Only observe that some horses make more free with themselves than others in sweating and running. It is therefore necessary for a rider to challenge such horses often, (unless they are very flighty), to ascertain how much they may have left in them; and holding them quietly together according to

their mouths and manner of running, will be the means of preventing their breaking way, and over-marking or otherwise abusing themselves in their sweats, trials, or races.

In order further to instruct the boy in riding, let us suppose, by way of example, half a dozen horses of different ages under the care of one groom, to have arrived at any place where a meeting is to be held, a fortnight or three weeks prior to such meeting at which the horses have to run over a two-mile round course. It is not customary for horses to leave the ground on which they may have been training so long previous to a meeting taking place. It is only usual, on such occasions, for the horses to take the last sweat on a course they have not run over. The object, however, for having the horses brought to a round course so long before running, is not only to shew the old horses the course, but principally to teach the young ones to turn upon it, as also to instruct the young boy whom I am teaching to ride, how to make a difficult turn, or, what used to be more commonly called, "running for the turn," which is a sort of thing horses as well as boys may be practised in when they are sweating over a round course, in preference to any other way.

To arrange this matter properly, previous to the horses going out to sweat, the groom, if he is a good judge, puts the best riding boys on the young ones, to teach and regulate them judiciously at the turns. Those boys who ride moderately well will do on the

old ones. As soon as the horses arrive at the sweating ground, the groom orders the boys with the young ones, to go to a certain part of the course, (what part, will depend on the length they have to sweat,) and to walk about until the other horses which have begun and have to sweat longer lengths, come to them. The younger ones then follow in line as directed, the boys on them having been previously cautioned to be very careful with them at their turns, which, if they ride as they ought, they know very well how to arrange.

Now, the boy I have been instructing to ride, should on his first being ordered to ride a sweat over a round course, be put to do it on an old horse—one which is known to be easy and kind at his turns, and should be placed second in the string; and, to give the boy an idea how he is to make his turns, the head lad, on one of the horses, should lead the sweat, and previous to his coming to a difficult turn, which requires some caution, (otherwise it is not necessary) he should, in time, turn his head and call the boy to follow him. The head lad should then also point out to the boy how far it is necessary for him to lay out of his ground so as to make the turn pretty close to the post without in the least altering the stride or pace of the horse. The head lad takes care to begin sufficiently early to lay his horse a little out of his ground as he is approaching the post at which he is to make the turn.

It is very necessary for a boy to know this part of riding well, in case he should be put up as a light weight to ride in a race; for if the boy properly

executes a difficult turn, he is not only close to the post, but he is immediately ready, without risk or difficulty, to make a run from it, should his horse be challenged there for running by any of the party. But if the boy attempts to turn immediately at the post, he must lay some way out of his ground in doing it, to make a difficult turn in this manner; the consequence of which in a race would be, that an experienced jockey, well placed, running with him, and having made this turn well previously to the coming to the post, would not only have the opportunity of running for the turn, but in doing it, he would, if he chose, oblige the boy to lay very much out of his ground. The experienced jockey would then take a pull to set his horse a-going, would slip the boy several lengths, and would thereby most likely win the race; for I have before observed, a length gained here may be worth five or six in straight running, if the proper advantage be taken of it.

I will just now state the advantages which may, and often have been taken by experienced jockeys; and which advantage the groom is very likely to explain to a good riding boy, and more particularly if he knows he shall shortly have occasion to put him up to ride a race over a round course.

The groom therefore takes an opportunity, and quietly talks to the boy of what may happen in the running. If a horse bolts, or lays a long way out of his ground, the groom says,—"If he is a good horse, and it is heats that you are running, the best way,

if a strong field, is for two or three of you to agree to run for the heat, and distance the horse if you can. If you do not succeed, his rider will most likely have taken a good deal out of him in saving his distance. In the second heat, if it can be agreed upon, those that laid by in the first, may take him off from the post, and keep at him the whole of the way home:—the others that waited in the second heat, may take him off again in the third. If he is not to be beaten by being thus run at, he proves himself to be very superior to the company he is in."

The groom, continuing his directions to the boy, says,—"Now, if the same sort of thing should happen to you when riding a race over a round course, by your horse bolting or laying out of his ground, you must instantly pull your horse up, and get fairly, and as quick as possible into the course again, and make all the running you can to save your distance; but never, under such circumstances, run to win. Having saved your distance, decline the heat, and pull your horse up the moment you are within the distance post, and walk him quietly to the scales to weigh. Your horse will not be much abused, nor will the public know any thing about him. But now, boy, if you should be engaged to ride in a match, and the horse you are riding against should swerve, or lay a long way out of his ground, the instant you observe this, take you a pull and make strong running with your horse, until you see, by keeping your head occasionally turned, the other jockey has got his horse into the

course again. Immediately you observe this, take a pull at your horse in order to ease him, and wait until the other horse, by persevering in the pace, has got nearly up to your horse's quarters. As soon as you perceive him close at hand, be you ready to take a pull and come home with your horse at his best pace. The horse that has been laying out of the ground, (if the jockey thinks he has any chance in the race,) must keep his place. If he can win under the above unfavourable circumstances, he will prove himself a most extraordinary good horse, or the horse you are riding must be an extraordinary bad one.

CHAPTER XVIII.

ON RIDING A FLIGHTY HORSE IN HIS EXERCISE, AND SWEAT.

I HAVE described in the last two chapters how the boy should be ordered to ride a craving horse, and a free kind going horse. Let us suppose the boy to have been riding different horses of the latter description, and that his temper is thereby so much improved, that he is become very cool and patient on horseback, and can ride well.

As there is another race-horse to be trained, differing in description from either of the last mentioned, and as he is to be very differently managed in his riding, I think it necessary, with a view further to instruct the boy, to point out here how such a horse should be rode.

The horse I now allude to, is in every respect the very reverse of the craving one. He is delicate in his constitution, irritable and flighty in his temper, and

easily alarmed, either in or out of the stables. There is nothing to be done with such a horse, but by the kindest and most gentle treatment, which I shall more accurately describe when on the subject of training such horses.

To bring the boy to ride a horse of the above description properly, the groom in giving his instructions seems to make a confident of him, and commences his conversation in the plural number. He says,—"We must mind, boy, what we are about with this horse, or we shall have him lose his temper, and if he does, neither you nor I will be able to do any thing with him. You must, therefore, be very quiet on him, and go with him by yourself to such a part of the downs (naming a part well known to the boy). When you get there, let him do just what he likes, it being a strange place to him. If he chooses to stand and look about, let him do so; you can at the same time speak kindly to him, and make much of him by patting him on the neck until he moves on of his own accord. If you manage him in this way, he will not be frightened at you; but if you and he agree tolerably well, he may now and then be a little calfish; and if he should, you must not pull rashly at him, but only just sufficient to keep his head up. But whatever you do, never attempt to hit him; for if you do, it is all over, and we shall never after get any good of him."

Pursuing his remarks, the groom says—"You must not attempt to give him a gallop, until you know him well, and unless you think he is rather inclined of him-

self to go off in one; and even then, you had better not attempt to hold or take a pull at him. If you do, it will most likely alarm him. The best way at first will most likely be, for you to sit on him as you would on a hack, cantering along the road. In pulling him up, you must do it very gently. Having done it, let him stand to blow, till he chooses to walk away of himself; and in coming to the troughs with him, if he appears to notice them, do not force him up to them, but turn him away and walk him about until the other horses are coming up to water. He will most likely go with them to the troughs without being in the least alarmed."

The horse above described has generally good speed, but is a jade in a greater or less degree. If his temper can be preserved by gentle treatment, some little work may be got into him, which will bring him something stouter for the length he can come; or perhaps in his race he may be got to go his best pace a few strides further than usual. The groom, with a view to attain this point, will probably send him lightly clothed (or, perhaps, without any clothes at all) over the sweating ground on the morning this is to happen. If the distance is not too far from the stables, it is very probable the groom will walk instead of riding to see the horse go over the ground. As the groom is going along, he enters into conversation with the boy, telling him how the horse is to be rode. He says,—"You must mind, boy; you know your horse is a flighty one; he may perchance make too free with himself in some part of

the ground, which is what we do not want him to do. You must, therefore, let him go off his own way as quietly as possible; and if he settles at any thing like a gentle sweating pace, you must sit very still on him, drop your hands, and keep your temper; and do not, if you can any way avoid it, move your body from the first position you take. If he makes too free with the pace, do not pull at him, but be perfectly still, and let him rate himself for the length he chooses, unless you find the length he has gone is beginning to tell on him, and that he is decreasing his pace a little. If so, speak softly to him, and if you think that, without irritating him, you can get a gentle pull, try to do it so as to collect him a little, that he may finish the length (for it is hardly to be called a sweat) without being tired or flurried. If you think the pull will set him agoing again, you had better not attempt it. He must take his chance now, and by and bye, we will try another method with him." But after the horse is pulled up, if the groom, on questioning the boy, finds that he and the horse have agreed tolerably well in coming so long a length, and that the horse is a good one (under the weights for his year) for the length he can come in his race, the boy must not on any account be taken from him.

CHAPTER XIX.

ON THE PULL AND HUSTLE.

The pull and hustle is better known to boys in racing stables who are perfect in their business than I shall probably be able to describe it; but as it is a sort of thing (from the manner in which horses are taught and trained) that answers the purposes for which it was intended, and as it requires to be thoroughly understood by all boys, riding gallops and sweats, I will, for the information of such of them as may be learning to ride, attempt to describe how and when this pull and hustle is to be put in practice, and how it is to be varied according to the effect which it is intended to produce on different horses. And to bring this matter more clearly before my readers, I shall again recur to some observations previously made in that part of this treatise which professes to teach a boy the art of riding.

The method adopted by a good riding boy, head

lad, or jockey, in holding a horse after he has started in his gallop, is by putting his hands well down on each side of the horse's withers. By this firm purchase, he is mostly enabled to keep his horse's head up and in place; for if, in the start, the horse gets his head down, he will, if he feels inclined to do so, most probably break away or begin his gambols, and perhaps throw his rider. Yet it is not to be understood that the rider is at all times to retain this firm hold of his horse's head. When the rider finds that his horse is settled in his stride, and that he begins, as a horse sometimes will, to reach with his head for a little more liberty of rein, the rider should (to prevent the horse's changing his legs or altering his stride) gently raise his hands off his horse's withers or quietly let them slide along that part, and give him the necessary liberty without letting the reins quite loose. But if the horse makes too free with the pace, the rider is to bring his hands gradually back to their former position, and endeavour to keep the horse more collected in his stride, by now and then giving and taking in this way, as occasion may require.

As the horse is proceeding in his sweat or race, whether he reaches again with his head or not, it is necessary that the rider should occasionally have recourse to the same method of easing and pulling his horse, with a view (as has already been noticed) of keeping his mouth alive and sensible to the bit. I mean by this, that the rider is never to have what is called "a dead pull" on the animal's mouth,

which, from this sort of thing, would soon become insensible to the pressure applied to it; the effect of which would be that the horse would have the pull upon the rider, and would, moreover, have the power of breaking away or bolting with the rider whenever he is so inclined. The horse, in doing this, might make too free with himself, both in the pace and length, from which he is likely to be overmarked, and get uncollected and quite abroad in his stride. In short, to use the common phrase of the stables, the horse becomes what is called a "spread eagle."

In my instructions given to the boy in riding, I have observed that although it may be necessary for him occasionally to make use of his legs and arms when riding a horse that may require his so doing, he must move his body as little as possible. But as this matter seems to call for some further explanation, it may not be out of place here to point out more fully what I mean relative to this subject.

There are a few instances in which the boy in riding is at times necessitated to move his body from the upright position in which I have already directed he is generally to keep it; but this very much depends on the sort of horse he is riding.

The position a boy first puts himself into when he is endeavouring to set his horse on his legs to start him, either in the commencement of his gallop or sweat, is that of moving his body forward over the horse's withers or part of his neck. The horse, if he has been any time in training, knows, by this movement of the rider,

that he is to get away in a gallop, which he does, if he is a kind, free goer, without giving the boy the trouble of pressing his heels against his sides.

When the horse is settled in his stride, the manner of his pulling and going on with the pace will very much regulate an experienced riding boy as to the position he will keep his body in. With a horse that is not easily flurried, it becomes a matter of choice with the boy as to the position he will take; but if it be a light, flighty irritable horse that the boy is riding, placing his hands well down, he cannot be too still nor too long in the first position he takes, nor can he, when he has occasion to alter it perhaps to a more upright one, be too quiet or too careful in so doing. For if a flighty horse feels any sudden alteration or movement of his rider, he either alters his stride, changes his legs, or becomes flurried, and then he begins pulling more determinedly. This must, if possible, be avoided, otherwise a flighty horse soon looses his temper, and is then of no use as a race-horse.

The horse that requires but little pulling or hustling in his exercise is the free, kind goer. He generally keeps his place both in his gallop and sweat. It is in his race that he requires pulling or hustling, which is sometimes occasioned by his being challenged by any horse in the company he may be running in, or when the horse we are describing has arrived at that latter part of the race which is the length of rally in which he can live the whole of the way home. The jockey's orders (if the horse has not before been called upon) on

arriving at this part of the course, are most likely to watch his opportunity, and to get the first effort. Having done this, with his hands raised off the horse's withers, he occasionally moves them gently up and down, and gives and takes with his reins (but they are not to be slack), pressing the horse's sides at the same time as much as may be necessary with the calves of his legs. Nor does a good jockey, in doing all this ever forget to catch with his body and hands the stride of the horse. The jockey proceeds thus with his horse in the rally until he comes within a few strides of home, when, if he finds the race is rather too near to be pleasant, he gets more determinedly at his horse's head. If he is a game horse, he stabs him a few times with his spurs, then gets up his whip, and perhaps strikes the horse two or three times, if he sees occasion for it, in finishing the race, when within a stride or two of the winning post.

The horse next to be noticed, and which is the one that requires the rider's exertions to get him along, more particularly in his sweats, is called the craving horse.

This appellation is applied to many of these horses from their being addicted to certain propensities, which are differently denominated by different training grooms, just according as they find such horses go in their gallops or sweats. They describe these by one or more of the following epithets :—a craving, idle, sluggish, sulky, heavy, hanging or lurching sort of horse. These horses seldom give themselves the trouble to swerve or go out ; nor are they very apt to tire in

their sweats; but some of them will shut up in them, that is, they will sulk and slacken their pace; nor can they at all times be got to struggle in a rally, unless they choose to come of themselves, however severely a rider may get at them. Whenever such horses are going to sweat, they require to be rode by boys that are in high practice in riding sweats, and that are very strong and determined on horseback.

To describe how this sort of horse is to be pulled and hustled, so as to get him along, let us suppose half a dozen horses sweating together, an idle, craving horse, with a good riding boy on him, being in front to lead them. The usual orders being given to the boy how he is to proceed with the pace as soon as the horses are got well away, the boy leading them with the craving horse soon finds he has to get at his horse's head by giving him a pull or two to get his head well up and in place, and to press him with his legs to keep him going. Thus the boy goes on until he comes to that part of the ground at which he is ordered to rate his horse a little faster, or to come home with him at the usual pace.

To assist in urging the craving horse on, it is likely that one or two of the boys have received orders to come with the horses they are riding in the sweat up to the craving horse's girths, and occasionally to challenge him; or the groom may have ordered a horse stripped to come with the craving one from this part of the ground home. Whichever of these orders is given is not very material. It is from this part of the

ground to the end of the sweat, that this pull and hustle is often had recourse to, to keep a craving horse going. The boy, firm and well down in his saddle, his body upright, his feet rather forward, with his hands raised, and a fast hold of his reins, sits thus cool and determined, keeping his horse's head up and in place; and as occasion may require, he moves his hands quickly up and down, now and then giving and taking with his reins. If necessary, he twists or crosses his hands over to the right or left of the horse's withers, just as he finds him inclined to hang either to the one side or the other. In this way, the boy can mostly get the horse off his hanging, and when he has succeeded in getting him to go straight, he then pulls and hustles him along, and having thereby roused him into the pace he is ordered to go, keeps him at it.

The boy presses the horse with the calves of his legs, and now and then he throws his heels quickly back with all his force against the horse's sides; at the same time, he is very likely to get up his ash plant and flourish it near the horse's head or over his own; or, if necessary, he drops it smartly down upon his horse's shoulders or under his belly. The boy then gets again at his horse's head, takes a pull, and gives him three or four good hustles. In this way, by pulling, hustling, and twisting, the boy, I may say, as it were, lifts the horse along at every stride. If the boy finds, that notwithstanding this exertion, which sometimes exhausts his patience and temper, he cannot succeed in sufficiently rousing his horse, he will then have recourse to

some such rough expression as "Come, or go along, you brute," to intimate and urge him on in finishing his sweat.

This is the manner in which a craving, idle, sulky horse is pulled or hustled, in order to get him at his best pace in concluding either his gallop, sweat, or race. In the language of the stable, this is called "getting at a horse, or setting-to with him for the rally he can live in;" and although the boy who has to ride a horse of this description must, in his exertions, use his hands, arms, legs, feet, and occasionally turn his head, with all his limbs in action at one and the same moment, yet he should be well down in his saddle, nor should his body move more than can possibly be avoided.

I am aware, from experience, that riding such craving horses in their sweats is much more easily talked about than done. Indeed, it is very laborious to keep some of them going, and to rate them properly for the lengths they have to come on those occasions. Such horses require to have on them boys that are not only in high practice in riding, but strong and determined on horseback. It is by no means a difficult task to learn how to make the exertions I have here mentioned, and to which all good riding boys are obliged to have recourse in urging such idle horses on. The youngest boy in the stable, from the directions of the head lad or training groom, together with the observations he makes on what he sees good riding boys do, soon becomes acquainted with this pull and hustle, so much so that many of the boys are too apt, unless they

are checked, to display their abilities in this way by practising this sort of riding in concluding the gallops and sweats, with horses which by no means require to be thus treated. These are precautions and instructions which I think it is necessary grooms should give their boys, with a view of bringing them to ride properly and agreeably to their orders. The directions I have here laid down, are such as I myself received when a boy. It is the different orders daily given by experienced training grooms how various horses are to be rode in their gallops and sweats, that instil into the minds of the boys who are riding them, the practical knowledge of good riding. It is not riding a race now and then that will make either a boy or a man a good jockey, or many gentlemen would become very excellent riders.

An exercise boy, when put up to ride in a race (unless the groom is a bad judge) is, in all probability, as good a rider as he ever will be; and for the horse he is going to ride, he may be, with very few exceptions, equal to any jockey in the race. I shall take a more favourable opportunity than is offered at the conclusion of the present chapter, of making some few remarks upon those who form these few exceptions.

CHAPTER XX.

ON THE DUTIES OF THE HEAD LAD.

By a head lad is understood a young man, or rather one who, when promoted, is fast approaching to man's estate. He is generally one who has been for some years previously brought up under the tuition of the groom, who is induced to select him for the situation from his general good conduct, and from his having a thorough knowledge of his business, both in the training as well as the riding of the horses, his private character having always been distinguished by a regard for secrecy, sobriety, and honesty—three very essential qualifications for either a training groom, jockey, head lad, or stable boy, to possess. Such a head lad, under the groom, has full authority over all the boys and horses both in and out of the stables. He instructs and directs the boys in every part of their duty, particularly that of riding. He rides any difficult horse, as occasion may require, in their gallops or sweats. During the absence of the groom, who may be attending

with some of his horses at any particular meeting, the head lad, having previously received the groom's orders, feeds and works such horses as may be left in the home stables, and when he is thus employed, he should be allowed the use of a hack. He is sometimes sent with a horse or two to a country meeting, and is occasionally entrusted to train and ride such horses. When the groom is otherwise employed, he is also entrusted with horses of value and in high repute that may be going to travel to any of the great meetings. There is one principle to which a head lad should strictly adhere, and that is,—secrecy relative to any horse's being amiss. He must not on any account communicate his thoughts or suspicions upon such a point in any way or to any person except to the training groom under whom he is serving. It may be necessary to caution a young beginner previous to his entering on a situation as a training groom or jockey, how he is to act towards his employer; and this shall form the subject of the next chapter.

CHAPTER XXI.

ON THE DUTIES OF PUBLIC AND PRIVATE TRAINING GROOMS, AND JOCKEYS.

It is almost unnecessary for me to observe here, that a man who is a training groom, either public or private, should be a sober, honest, attentive, and intelligent man. He must be perfectly well acquainted with every individual thing relating to a race-horse. With a clear head, his thoughts should be almost incessantly occupied in studying the different tempers and constitutions of such horses as may be placed under his care to train. He should minutely calculate every point, both for and against each horse, so that he may be able properly to arrange the feeding and working of the horses under his care. He must have a quick eye, to observe in due time the changes any of his horses may be likely to make. It is by strictly observing all such things, that he is able to bring each horse to post in such form as will enable him to come the length he may be engaged to run at his best pace, and without the risk of injuring his constitution.

Besides a clear head and a quick eye, there is one more essential that a groom should possess, and that is a still tongue. For, as public trainer, he is very likely to have a large establishment of horses standing in his yard, many of which, if not all of them, are under his direction. Being thus engaged to train for different noblemen and gentlemen of the turf, he must learn to be silent in order to give general satisfaction to every one of his employers, but more particularly if any one of the horses belonging to different owners should be matched against each other, or engaged together in the same stakes or plates. It is true that it does not often happen that horses so matched stand together, and it is a sort of thing which should at all times be avoided by the owners of such horses as are training in the same yard, for it must necessarily be unpleasant to the trainer (there being but one horse that can win); and although he may endeavour to serve all his employers with equal integrity, yet from the opinions formed by inexperienced sportsmen of the properties of their horses, disappointments in the result of a race will sometimes occasion jealousy to arise in the minds of the most liberal of those whose horses may have been beaten. Noblemen and gentlemen who employ a public training groom will of course at all times require of him how their horses may be going on in their work, and they will, not unfrequently, request his individual opinion of them. He should always reply cautiously. I do not mean to say that he should prevaricate, but the less he says to a young sportsman, the

better, unless he has any thing to communicate that, without an accident, would be highly advantageous. Advice, though well intended, given unasked to a young nobleman or gentleman, may be displeasing to the employer, and will probably prove injurious to the groom, by such noblemen or gentlemen ordering their horses to be removed from his stables. But to an old experienced sportsman, who the groom knows has confidence in him, he may open his mind rather freely, and may even go so far as to recommend him in due time to draw his horse, if he thinks there is no chance of his winning. He may thereby save the horse from being abused, and if the thing be well managed, it may perhaps save the payment of forfeit or entrance money. But under all circumstances, I cannot help again remarking, that a public training groom, in giving his advice on such occasions, should be very cautious indeed. The most proper channel of communicating all such advice is through that which of all others is likely to be most satisfactory to all parties,—the private trials, or public running of the horses.

The private training groom should, in every respect, be equal to the public training groom, in regard to the knowledge of his business. This man has a much less difficult game to play than the public trainer. It is not unfrequent for the private training groom to reside on the premises of the nobleman or gentleman in whose employ he may be, and to be training the horses entrusted to his care, in his master's park,

and perhaps not in a racing neighbourhood; as, for example, at the Earl of Egremont's, at Petworth. He has therefore an opportunity of keeping his horses' properties secret, confiding them to his master only, and he can enter freely and without fear into conversation with his employer, upon the qualifications of the horses. This retired situation, removed from the public eye of curiosity, enables them, both before Christmas and in the spring, to make the necessary trials of the various powers of their horses, and to form, in a quiet way, a correct judgment, under what weight and what length each horse will run to the greatest advantage. By comparing the results of these trials with the measurement which they may have had an opportunity of making, in public running, of the powers of other horses, the owner will be in a situation of entering or matching his horse in public running, to a decided advantage.

It is by training grooms that race-horses are brought to post in the highest possible state of condition. Such horses are trained by these men, according to their ages, tempers, constitutions, and the running properties each may possess, in the length he can best run, under certain weights. These points can only be known to the trainers who direct and superintend the feeding, watering, and working of the race-horses entrusted to their care, and who should consequently be the only persons to give orders, how such horses are to be rode in their different races. Trainers also know best how to select those jockeys who are in high practice,

and whose skill, and coolness, combined with judgment and a quick decision, enable them to make the most of every fair advantage that may offer in the running in favor of the horses they ride.

Such men as I have been describing are invaluable to their employers. It is on the sound judgment, integrity, and honesty of men of the above description that many, many thousand pounds are often depending. I, therefore, strongly recommend to the notice of both trainers and jockeys, at all times and on all occasions, to adhere strictly to the old proverb, that "honesty is the best policy;" which principle in the character of man, Shakspeare has so finely exemplified in the following lines,—

> "This above all, to thine own self be true;
> And it must follow, as the night the day,
> Thou can'st not then be false to any man."

CHAPTER XXII.

ON THE TREATMENT OF HORSES' FEET, AND ON SHOEING.

It is generally understood, that until horses are brought into a stable, their feet require but very little attention. While roving about in a state of nature, they are generally sound and healthy. But it is to be observed, that when a horse is taken up from grass and brought into the stable to be got into condition, a very great change is produced in his constitution by the dry food on which he then almost solely subsists; but the change will, in a great measure, be corrected by the horse himself; and he will assist (if allowed to do so) the digestion of the dry food he eats, by the quantity of water he chooses to drink at different intervals during the day. But he has no power to meet or counteract the very great change which is at the same time taking place in his feet. This must be left partly to the care of the groom who looks after him, and partly to the smith. They should direct

their attention to this point immediately on the horse's coming into the stable, and while his feet are yet in a perfect state; for if they once become diseased, it is difficult to get them sound: at least, I have found this to be the case.

Hunters and horses in common use are not so much exposed, nor for a long time, to the same causes which injure their feet, as race-horses are. The former are only working through the winter, and then mostly on soft or moist ground. In the summer, these horses rest, and if their feet are properly attended to during that season, there is time for them to recover any common injury they may have sustained in the course of their winter's work. Similar precautions may be adopted with respect to carriage-horses or hacks, by turning them out of work for a sufficient period; but the race-horse cannot be so conveniently put out of work as either of these.

A race-horse, unless an accident happens to him, is kept up longer and more constantly in an artificial state, than any other horse.

Two and three year old colts which are bred for the turf, and are engaged early in great stakes, are often in training as yearlings, in the winter as well as in the summer; and when they come to a more advanced age as country platers, some of them have come to post early in spring, and run at different meetings until late in the autumn.

Although these horses may not be actually abused by a summer's running, yet many of them will become

very stale from it; and for such strong horses, there is not much more than three months in winter allowed for them to rest, to put up flesh, and to get fresh, before they must again commence training. During the time they are laying by, they must have bedding to lay on by day as well as by night.

It is almost unnecessary for me to observe here, that the bedding of a race-horse cannot well be dispensed with it at any time, as horses in strong work require to rest by day as well as by night, and many of them do lay by day, stretching and resting their limbs and muscles; so that they are, for sixteen or eighteen hours out of the four-and-twenty, standing or laying with their hoofs constantly covered up with the warm bedding. This keeps their feet very hot and dry, and is one of the principal causes which occasions them to contract; nor has the horse the same power within himself of remedying this change produced in his feet, as he has of counteracting the change which takes place in his constitution, on his being brought from a state of nature into an artificial one.

All grooms should endeavour to make themselves acquainted with the nature of different horses' feet, more particularly such training grooms as may be travelling with country plate horses,—as a preventative is better than a cure. They should not only see that their boys are attentive in the common care of their horses' feet,—such as picking them out and washing them, — but grooms should endeavour to

obtained a thorough knowledge of such treatment as may be necessary to preserve their horses' feet in as healthy a state as possible. They should endeavour also to make themselves acquainted with such remedies as may be most advantageously applied to give relief when their horses' feet* are somewhat diseased or out of order from being repeatedly shod and plated. For race-horses can no more work, travel, or run with bad feet than with bad legs. Grooms were formerly particularly attentive to the latter, but I have known them neglect the former, unless when their horses' shoes or plates were put on by a strange smith. This is very improper. They should, on all occasions, pay the strictest attention to their horses' feet, as Veterinary Surgeons in high practice are not to be met with in every town, neither are good shoeing or plating smiths to be found at every racing meeting.

The feet of race-horses are mostly small and strong, with a deep or high crust. Their heels are also high and strong and their soles concave. Horses with such very strong feet have been known to work for years without shoes, but then this has been under peculiar circumstances.

The feet of all horses are liable to contraction. This is easily to be observed, particularly in old horses which have been kept in an artificial state; their feet become long and narrow, and their heels contracted. Yet many horses with their feet in this state may be observed to go perfectly sound.

The reason Professor Coleman gives why horses with such feet are not lame, is, that nature sometimes accommodates herself to the slow progress of the disease, and as the foot contracts in breadth, so it increases in length. The professor is of opinion, that by these means lameness is often obviated in such horses.

But when contraction is sudden, lameness is more frequently produced. This shows how necessary it is to pay the strictest attention to horses' feet when they first come into the stables, at which time they are in a sound and perfect state, as the feet of racing colts invariably are, if they have received proper attention while in their paddocks. In such situations their feet are almost constantly moist; even in the summer, their feet are moistened by the dew of the grass, twelve hours out of the four-and-twenty. And while they are in their paddocks, they are almost always in action; their feet are exposed to the air on a soft, cool surface; and as colts are generally at this time pretty lusty, there is a good deal of weight on their feet, which may much assist in keeping them expanded while in the natural moist state in which they are so long as they continue in their paddocks.

Before I proceed to speak of the remedies necessary to be applied to horses' feet with a view to keep them sound and healthy, I shall give a description of the external horny covering of the horse's foot, and how it is divided. I shall compress and simplify the matter as much as I can. For to enter minutely into the anato-

mical structure of the sensible parts of the foot would probably be more curious than useful to either grooms or smiths; but it may be advantageous to both to give a plain description of the external covering.

The whole of the upper part of the crust, which is connected or joined with the skin at the lower part of the pastern, is termed the coronet; the sides of the foot are called the quarters; and the quarters terminate in the heels. The front and lower part, is the toe of the hoof; this latter is the term sometimes given to the external covering of the foot. The sole is of the form of an arch, and situated round the bottom or under-part of the foot, and has a certain limited motion whenever the foot is in action. The bars are a continuation of the crust,—they are convex, and extend along the sides of the frog. The frog is composed of soft, elastic horn, is convex, of a wedge-like form, and is situated in the middle of the sole, is pointed towards the toe, and spreads as it advances to the heel. In the centre of the broad part there is a fissure, which, when diseased, is termed a thrush. It is almost unnecessary for me to remark that the horny parts composing the hoof, are for the defence and protection of the sensible or internal parts of the foot, and should therefore, for this purpose, be left of a certain substance.

Authors, who have published on the Veterinary art, have given various opinions with regard to the uses of the frog of the horse's foot. Whatever may be the functions that nature intended it should perform, it appears to me to be highly necessary that grooms and

others, who have the care of horses, as well as the smith who shoes them, should become well acquainted with this part of the foot, as also with all other external parts of it. I shall therefore give my opinion, though briefly, on this matter, as far as I am capable of judging from the practical knowledge I have been able to derive from directing and superintending the shoeing of horses for the last eighteen years, in the regiment in which I have now the honour to serve. From this practice, I am induced to coincide with the opinion of Professor Coleman, and to think, with him, that this part of the foot (the frog), from its elastic and wedge-like form, is intended to receive pressure,—but certainly not constant, artificial pressure, to the extent and for the length of time it has often been applied. I think that wearing the iron frog in the stables, and also wearing bar shoes, if continued for several shoeings, generally bring on diseased frogs,—that is to say, if these are applied for the purposes for which such shoes are usually intended; which is to take the pressure off the heels of such horses' feet as may have them diseased from corns or any other cause. Under these circumstances, it is, of course, necessary to apply bar shoes, having previously removed a certain portion of horn from the parts diseased, to prevent, as much as possible, such parts coming in contact with pressure. Which being effectually done, the bar shoe is applied, and the frog, if sound and of sufficient substance, now receives a great portion of pressure, which I consider to be artificial, and which, if continued for a long time,

generally produces diseased frogs. This may be obviated by making the bar part of the shoe unreasonably wide; which, however, is rather objectionable for pleasure horses—as racers, hunters, and hacks. Yet these bar shoes, properly made, are very useful for draught horses, and indeed for any horses whose feet may be so diseased as not to go sound without them.

From the manner in which cart horses working in London and in many of our provincial mercantile towns are shod, the frogs of their feet are seldom or ever in contact with the ground, in consequence of the very high caulkings of their shoes, which are necessary to prevent their slipping when exerting themselves in the drawing of heavy loads.

Now it is horses of the above description that are, perhaps, more subject to that obstinate disease "canker," than many of our pleasure horses are; the cause of which, I am of opinion, is the want of pressure on the frog. Be this as it may; whether draught horses' feet become affected with the disease just mentioned from the want of pressure, or whether it proceeds from a want of proper attention being paid to their feet in the stables, or from their feet not being properly cleaned out at the smith's shop prior to their being shod,—or, whether it results from a running thrush having been long neglected, or from the discharge proceeding from the grease penetrating through the clefts of the frog, and thereby occasioning the disease,—or whether a horse becomes affected with it from any hereditary cause, as that of being bred from either a

horse or mare which may have long been subject to the disease,—it matters not. From whatever cause the disease may proceed, whenever it does make its appearance, it mostly makes the frog its place of preference; and, if neglected, it spreads to the other parts of the foot. Now, the frog being thus affected with canker, is in a highly diseased state; yet notwithstanding this, one of the first steps towards the cure of the disease is to lower the horse's heels, so as immediately to throw as much pressure as possible upon the frog, even in its diseased state. So necessary is pressure to the frog in forwarding the cure, that if it cannot be obtained by the above means, a bar shoe is put on; and after the dressing has been applied, the foot is stopped up with tow as tight as it can well be done, so as to throw all the pressure possible upon the frog, with a view to keep down the fungous parts which are much inclined to rise on its surface. So that even in a diseased state, this part of the foot (the frog) will not only bear pressure, but, that pressure being applied to it, becomes one of the principal remedies for bringing it again to its former healthy state.

From this it appears necessary that the frog of the horse's foot should receive natural pressure, by being allowed to come fully in contact with the ground.

The wall or crust of many of our large horses' feet (such as heavy coach and draught horses) is much too oblique, with low weak heels and convex soles. These diseases, or perhaps, more properly speaking, the ill-formation of many such horses' feet, more frequently

proceeds from their being bred (as most horses of this description are) in low, wet, moist situations, as in the fens of Lincolnshire, than, as is often supposed, from hereditary causes.

The horn of horses' feet which are bred in such swampy places, being rapidly forced in its growth by the constant moisture, becomes thin and weak, and is soft and elastic from its being almost constantly exposed to wet; so that the wall or crust of the fore-foot is scarcely ever equal to support the weight of such heavy draught horses when bred in such situations. From this cause, the feet of many such horses expand to an unreasonable size, and the soles of their feet are to be seen protruding more or less.

It is a pity that all such horses are not bred in drier situations; if they were, their feet would be good, and strong in proportion to their weight and size, and they could be continued more constantly than they are at present at the work to which they are accustomed. Their feet being strong and in good form, they could be shod with much greater ease, and could wear plain instead of enormously heavy bar shoes. I dislike such ill-formed large footed horses, as much as coarse large headed ones; for both these defects (as they may be correctly termed) are much more likely to retard than to increase the speed of the horse; nor would I breed from either stallions or mares with such imperfections.

When race-horses, hunters, or hacks, have such feet as I have just described, (which I allow is not frequently the case, more particularly with race-horses,) —

when, I say, it does happen that these horses have convex feet, it is customary not to make their shoes of more substance or of greater breadth than can possibly be avoided, according to the size of the foot and the weight of the horse, as these horses have to go a more rapid pace than heavy horses of slower movements—such, for instance, as those which work in harness. Neither race-horses nor hacks have occasion for caulkings to their shoes. The same may be said with respect to hunters, unless when hunting. In shoeing such of these horses as have convex feet, it is not an easy matter for the smith to prevent the frogs from coming somewhat in contact with the ground, in consequence, as I have already observed, of the quarters and heels of such feet being so very low and weak; from which circumstance, the frogs are invariably large, and in a most sound, healthy, and elastic state. This arises from their being almost constantly in contact with the ground. Whether such horses are standing in the stables, or are in action, their frogs are exposed to what may be called natural pressure, which I conceive to be absolutely necessary; and I recommend that it should at all times be allowed to take place when it can conveniently be done, by the heels of strong feet being kept moderately low, and the frog pared as little as possible.

The horses belonging to the regiment in which I am now serving are light, with some little breeding; consequently there are but few with feet of the above description. But when any of their feet are in such a

state, they are not so much deformed, nor at all times so deficient of horn, as many of the draught horses I have mentioned. However, all such feet generally require to be well furnished with iron. The breadth and substance of the shoes must be regulated according to the size and weight of the horse, and to the sort of work in which he is engaged. And unless such horses are shod under the superintendence of an experienced veterinary surgeon, or by a good shoeing smith in high practice, their feet soon get out of order.

My method of having cavalry horses shod that have convex feet, is, to shoe them often; but I never allow the soles of their feet to be pared to a greater extent than is absolutely necessary until the crust or wall of the foot has grown down. This is to prevent their soles from further protruding, which has been brought on by their being kept too weak. To give strength to the heels, I have the toes kept short; and if I see it necessary, I order bar shoes to be applied on one or two occasions, or until the wall or crust has grown and become sufficiently strong. When that is accomplished, I order plain shoes of a substance and breadth equal to the weight of the horse.

Such feet seldom require to be moistened by the application of water, but for the purpose of promoting the growth of the horn and keeping it tough. Tar ointment is the best application I am acquainted with; it is composed of equal parts of tar and mutton suet, or lard. This ointment, as well as the ointment, yellow basilicon, have been long in use with grooms and

farriers, and most excellent applications they are for keeping the horn of horses' feet tough and elastic. The application is to be used twice or thrice a week, and to be well rubbed round the hoof. In applying it to the soles, it should be spread on pledgets of tow, covering the whole surface of the sole, and to be sufficient in quantity or substance to give some degree of pressure to the sole, whereby the crust or wall of the foot will be relieved of a certain portion of its weight; and the edges of the tow should be pressed under the shoe, so as to give pressure to those parts in a similar way.

By the method of shoeing, and the treatment here recommended, I have not only kept horses in work that have been at head quarters; but their feet have so much grown, and become so strong, as to admit of their being almost constantly shod in plain shoes.

I have thus far given my opinion with regard to the application of pressure on the frog, and also such instructions for the shoeing and treatment of such feet as the practice I have had authorizes me to give; and which I hope will be sufficient for the guidance of grooms and smiths who have the care and shoeing of race-horses, subject to such imperfections.

With regard to the feet of thorough-bred horses generally, I would observe, that these horses, having their origin in a hot climate, and being bred on a dry soil, their feet are, as I have before noticed, almost invariably found to be strong, upright, and small, with the soles concave. This description is applicable to the

majority of the race-horses now bred in this country, which are subject, either from accident, inattention, or other causes, to most of the diseases met with in the feet of horses employed in common use. But the diseases to which all horses with strong feet are principally subject, are "bad thrushes," "contraction," and not unfrequently, that which is termed "the navicular disease;" which latter was formerly better understood by describing the horse as being "foundered or groggy."

The locality of this disease is between the navicular bone and the flexor tendon, which latter passes over the former in its way to be inserted into the coffin bone—this is the seat of the disease. The surface of the navicular bone, and that part of the tendon immediately over it, become heated and inflamed when diseased; which is occasioned by the concussion produced in the rapid pace horses are at times obliged to go over hard ground. From a frequent repetition of these causes, the inflammation increases to such an extent as to terminate in an ossification of the parts, which are thereby deprived of their natural action, and indeed, of all action whatsoever; and horses which are severely affected with the complaint, may be seen going as they possibly can on their hind quarters.

Race-horses are occasionally subject to the above disease; but there are some among them—such as the craving ones, which are more liable to become affected with the complaint than the light ones, in consequence of their having not only to go long lengths in their

gallops and sweats, but occasionally to sweat three times a fortnight, and not unfrequently, in the height of summer—in the months of July and August,—when most of our training and running grounds in the south may be said to be very little better (in regard to the hardness of their surfaces) than turnpike roads. From the unavoidable necessity there is for keeping these horses almost constantly in strong work on such hard ground, the feet of some of them become heated and inflamed,—so much so, that it is not uncommon for the groom now and then to observe a horse in the string, when walking away first from the stable (perhaps the morning after sweating) to go a little stiff and feeling in his fore feet. The groom (if he is competent) on observing this, takes the earliest opportunity of recommending the owner to put the horse out of work for a short time, and by bleeding and giving him physic and rest, the inflammation in his feet subsides; and to any but a very accurate observer he will then appear to go sound. The owner, acting upon the hint given him by the training groom, will probably sell the horse. Should he not be disposed of, he is, of course, again put into training; and the same cause (strong work) very soon produces the same effect, and the horse at last becomes permanently diseased in his fore feet. He is seen by the groom to go very feeling in them in his walk; and in his gallops and sweats, he goes stiff and short in his stride.

The groom, now finding he cannot get the length

into the horse at the usual pace, recommends the owner to put the horse out of training; and perhaps at an age when there might have been a great deal of good running left in him; and in all probability, he might have continued in training for two or three years longer, had proper attention been paid to his feet while he yet continued a young one.

To make further comment on the navicular disease would be useless, as I am totally unacquainted with any remedy by which it may be cured. Attention should principally be directed to prevent, as much as possible, this disease, or any other, from taking place; for when horses fall lame in their feet, it is often difficult to get them sound again, unless the lameness proceeds from a mechanical injury. I think of the number of horses that become progressively lame from strong and rapid work not more than half are again brought permanently sound, unless their work is stopped, and early means resorted to for their relief.

It has been pretty generally remarked by those who have travelled on the Continent, (and I have observed the same myself,) that horses there are not to be seen lame in their feet to any thing like the extent of our horses in England. This circumstance has led many people to suppose that there must be some very great defect in the shoeing of horses in this country, which does not exist on the Continent.

This is certainly not the fact. In proof of this contradictory assertion, I shall take, by way of example, the horses most frequently and the most

actively employed on the Continent—the French post, or diligence horse. The hunters of that country I know nothing about; and as to their saddle-horses, I have never seen any of them out of a walk or slow jog-trot. It is to be observed, that these horses are of a very different description from our English horses. The French post-horses may be said to be a well-bred, light sort of cart-horse. The French diligence horse is of a similar description, but larger; both of them have large, open, strong feet. These horses are not only very differently used, but they are also very differently kept to what the mail, post, and stage coach horses are in England. The French horses go much shorter stages, many of which are not half the distance of our stages; and besides this, they travel a much slower pace—not more than five or six miles per hour, and often on paved roads, which, I am inclined to think, is another circumstance in favour of the French horses' feet.

The stables in which the French post and diligence horses are kept are seldom or ever paved; neither is it by any means a general rule with the French stable people to bed down their horses by day. Their horses' feet are therefore much exposed to the cool, soft, and somewhat moist surface of their stable floors. But when we come to look at our English post, mail, or coach horse, we find, that with regard to breeding, he is altogether a different sort of animal,—his feet are small and strong, and he is not only differently employed and differently kept, but he is mostly going at the rate of from ten to twelve miles an hour—a pace

that produces great concussion and heat in a horse's feet, and more particularly in hot weather; and not unfrequently, many of our post-horses are driven this telling pace for a distance of twelve or fourteen miles before they are put into the stables; and when they are there, they are generally up to their knees in bedding necessary for them to rest and lay on, but which keeps their feet very hot, notwithstanding the cow dung with which they may be stopped at night. I am of opinion, that it is the rapidity of pace and the long lengths so often repeated, that subject so many more of our horses to lameness in the feet; and I do not think (as is generally supposed) that the horses of the Continent are less subject to it from any superiority in the French method of shoeing.

I am inclined to think, that were proper attention paid to colts immediately on their being taken from their paddocks into the training stables, causing their feet to be cleaned out as often as may be found necessary, according to the strength and growth of their feet, and their shoes with sufficient cover and substance to be properly fitted — aided by such other treatment as I shall presently mention, there would be but few race-horses, or indeed, horses of any description, that would become lame in their feet, from contraction, the navicular, or any other disease, unless such as may be brought on by injuries originating from accidents.

If the stables in which race-horses stand are on the downs on which the horses are to exercise (as is often

the case), there will be no hard road for them to walk over in going to the exercise ground, the surface of which, in winter (except in the time of frost) is soft, moist, and cool. Some horses are two or three hours a day at exercise, as many of them have to come to post early in the spring. Their feet, during this period of exercise, become, to a certain extent, relaxed and cool, more particularly if there has been much wet during the night; and if the necessary attention be paid to their feet on returning to the stables, they may be said to be kept nearly approaching to that natural and healthy state in which they were previous to their leaving their paddocks, provided they wear three-quarter shoes instead of those which are made to come full home to the heels of their feet.

Country plate horses that have become stale from travelling and running during the summer, and that have also their feet much broken from the repeated replacing of their shoes and plates, have seldom to come out very early in spring. They are generally wintered in loose boxes; and during the whole of the time that such horses remain in them and out of work, they should wear on their fore-feet three-quarter shoes, with a clip at the toe, and three nails on each side of each foot; but the nails should not approach closer to the heels than is absolutely necessary to keep the shoes on. Once in about every three weeks (depending much on the growth and strength of the feet) the shoes should be removed, and also the front part of the feet properly cleaned out, and, if necessary, the toes should be shortened; the heels and quarters should be allowed to

grow, but the detached parts of the frog may be removed, so that, when a horse is taken to work in the spring, his feet may be put in proper form to have the short shoes applied.

The treatment necessary to be adopted in the care of such horses' feet when they are kept in the stables, is a subject to which grooms should pay the strictest attention.

Horses that have strong feet, require to have them more relaxed by the application of water, than those which have weak feet; the latter require more the application of ointment to the foot to promote growth, and to keep their hoofs tough.

Country plate horses that have strong feet, and that are mostly in strong work in the summer, (at which season it is that training as well as running grounds are very hard,) are often travelling on hot dry roads; and unless moisture be sufficiently and properly applied to their fore-feet, much of the natural expansion and elastic parts of their heels and quarters are destroyed. Those parts become dry, hard, and brittle, and the natural consequence is, that greater concussion takes place in the feet of horses in this state, when they are going at a rapid pace, as in running heats of long lengths in light plates on a hard course than there would otherwise be, were their feet in a more elastic state.

To apply moisture to the feet of horses, the patent sponge water boots have been strongly recommended. They are certainly very useful, and it is probable the

more convenient and ready way of softening and relaxing the hoofs of horses in case active inflammation takes place in their feet from fever, or when contraction comes on suddenly. For such purposes I have used the sponge boots with the best effects, but I should never apply them to moisten the feet of horses that are to be kept in work. On such occasions, I think they relax the feet too suddenly; besides which they are unwieldy things for a boy in a race-horse stable to handle; they are also found to be very inconvenient for horses to rest in, that are in health, and have to go out to exercise twice a day, as most horses in training do.

During my practice in the Cavalry for these last eighteen years, whenever any of the troop horses having strong feet, have become lame from their feet having contracted, and the hoofs hard and brittle, (which is common in a dry Spring, or in the hot Summer months), I have ordered them to stand in clay and water, if I have plenty of spare stable room in their barracks. Their full shoes having previously been taken off, their feet cleaned out, and three-quarter shoes put on them. The period I allow these horses to stand in clay and water depends much on the sort of feet they have and the state they may be in. The stronger horses' feet are, the more they require to be relaxed by moisture. Some horses I keep standing in wet clay every day from morning till night, for three weeks or a month, as I conceive it necessary; others I keep in it for ten days or a fortnight, and unless these

horses are very lame, they go to exercise morning and evening, or do their duty, which ever I think best for them. The feet of many horses soon become relaxed and cool from this sort of treatment, and as the growth of the horse is increased by the moisture, the heels and quarters expand, by which means many horses that have been very feeling and lame in their feet, have become sound.

When a horse has thus recovered, or perhaps a short time before he is quite sound, rather than have a horse's feet get dry too suddenly, I shorten the period of his standing in wet clay, allowing him to stand in it every other day; and previous to his leaving the hospital stables, I only allow him to stand in it twice a week. During the intervals between these immersions, I order his feet to be rubbed round with the tar ointment, which is a very necessary application, to prevent the feet from cracking, to which they are subject after having been immersed in water. Some troop horses, whose feet have been slowly progressing into a diseased state, and which have not discovered any symptoms of lameness until they have become old, I have seldom succeeded with in getting them sound.

I do not pretend to know more in the cure of horses' feet than other Veterinary Surgeons. I have merely stated here what treatment I have adopted in the cure of the feet of troop horses, and by what means I have succeeded in bringing many of them again into a fit state for duty.

But the feet of race-horses cannot be kept cool and

relaxed by the means which I have described as having been applied for that purpose to the feet of troop horses. The former must not have their work stopped when in regular training. They can scarcely be allowed to miss a single gallop, which by the training groom may be considered necessary. They must also have their beds to lay and rest on by day as well as by night; and under these circumstances, clay and water could not be conveniently applied, nor do I approve of the patent boots for the reasons I have already given.

My own horses and those of other officers of the regiment, stand in the stables much in the same way as horses in training do,—that is, their bedding is kept under them day and night. Whenever any of those horses have been amiss in their feet, either from contraction or from the horn becoming dry, hard, or brittle, and some parts broken away, I have recommended to relax and promote the growth of such feet, the moisture being applied to them by means of a piece of common coarse sacking, long enough to go round the wall or crust of the foot, and soaked in water previous to its being tied on round the hoof with a piece of string. This application should be wetted every stable hour. This is generally my method of applying moisture to my own horses' feet. Pads made for the purpose are, of course, more convenient; they may be made of coarse canvass doubled to the breadth of the hoof, stuffed with a sufficient quantity of tow or any other material that may answer the purpose better, with pieces of broad coarse tape fixed at the ends of each

pad, and long enough to tie in front of the horse's foot. The soles of horses' feet may be kept soft and cool in a similar way, by taking a sufficient quantity of tow, to form pledgets large and thick enough to fill up the cavity at the bottom part of each fore-foot to such extent as to give a certain degree of pressure to the whole surface of the sole. The edges of those pledgets should be pressed round under the shoe with a picker, after which each pledget of tow is to be wetted with a sponge full of water, or the foot may be dipped into a bucket of cold water every stable hour.

The tow, from the weight of the horse while standing in the stable, takes the impression of the foot, and remains with it as long as the horse remains in the stable, whether standing or lying. But the tow as well as the pads are both to be removed, previous to the horses going out to exercise, and may be laid aside against the wall at the back of the stall until the horse comes in and has been dressed. The pad, if well made, will last a long time, and the same stopping of tow will answer very well for a week or ten days. This is a clean and convenient way of applying moisture to the fore feet of horses that are in regular work, and I believe is much practised at the college.

I have found it answer the purposes very well, and it appears to have all the advantages of clay and water in softening, cooling, and relaxing horses' feet. I think the method of stopping with tow is certainly to be preferred to the use of cow dung; for if this latter application is too frequently laid on over the frog, it

will occasionally bring on thrushes, whereas the wet tow may be used without fear of its producing such consequences. Indeed this latter can be more conveniently laid round the sole only—its application need not extend over the frog of the foot, unless when necessary.

When a horse is dressed and done up after sweating, it may perhaps be as well to moisten the pads and tow for his feet, in the same hot water in which his legs were fomented; at least, I expect this will be more satisfactory to the groom.

Although I have had horses go to walking exercise with their feet stopped with tow, and the stopping has remained in until they have returned to the stable; some horses which are wintering in loose houses, are apt to range about the loose house and exercise themselves by walking, trotting, or sometimes even cantering round. To prevent the tow from falling out of their feet, on such occasions, a couple of splints may be laid across each other under the shoes.

The same precautions may be taken with horses that are restless in dressing. I allude to such of them as may stamp, and strike out with their fore-feet, and range about in the stall. To attend to all that I have here mentioned relative to the application of moisture to the feet of race-horses, will take but a very few minutes in a stable hour. When the boy who looks after a horse is too young to be entrusted with this charge, one of the senior boys or the head lad may do

it for him, after the horse is brushed over, his legs rubbed, and his bed set fair.

This is the sort of treatment I recommend to the notice of training grooms in the care of their horse's feet, and which should be attended to immediately on colts leaving their paddocks, or rather, as soon as they are broke and have been brought into the training stables to go into regular work. I think there cannot be too much attention paid to the feet of horses generally, and particularly race-horses, as many thousands are often depending on them; to say nothing of the expense of training and entrance money, both of which must be paid whether the horse run or not.

The strictest attention should be paid by grooms as well as by smiths, to the paring of horses' feet. Grooms should also make themselves thoroughly acquainted with this matter, so that they may be able to direct any awkward country smith, whom they may occasionally fall in with, how to shoe their horses when travelling; as there are many such smiths who are apt to make rather too free with the knife, while others of more experience are particularly careful.

A good shoeing smith, who has been properly taught and long practiced in the shoeing of different descriptions of feet, has made but bad use of his time if he cannot, on examining the horse's foot, immediately see from what parts it is necessary to remove horn, and what parts he should leave untouched by the knife. If he is a good judge, he will not remove the smallest portion of horn from a weak convex foot, or indeed,

from any foot that is weak or much broken. With the exception of any little detached parts, he should preserve the horn as much as he can, with a view to strengthen and support the foot to the utmost, by which means he obtains a safer and more secure hold in the foot for his nails. To give strength to the heels and quarters, the toes require to be kept short; but previously to removing horn from those parts, the smith should see what strength of horn he has there. Generally speaking, there is more horn at the toes of convex feet than there is at the toes of horses' feet which are much stronger; yet care should be taken, (more particularly if horses are to be kept in work), not to remove the horn from those parts to an extreme, as this would occasion pressure on the nails.

In case it is necessary, the shoes may be nailed round the toes, or they may be secured by putting a clip here. This latter mode is to be preferred when a foot is not in a state to admit of nails being driven sufficiently far back at the quarters, for the purpose of keeping the shoe secure.

Horses that have convex feet, have the largest and most healthy frogs. It is only necessary to remove from them any detached or ragged parts, so as to prevent the gravel or dirt from accumulating there, and producing thrushes. The foot cleaned out, and the rasp run lightly round the crust to take the rough edges off and level the foot, is all which is necessary previous to the shoe being applied.

Race-horses' feet, generally speaking, are very strong.

It is therefore as necessary for training grooms to be quite as well acquainted with the paring or cleansing out of strong feet as weak ones. Men that are at all conversant with horses, or that have paid any attention to the shoeing of them, are fully aware, that if any part of the shoe when nailed on, should come in contact with the sole, lameness will eventually, if not immediately, be produced. It therefore becomes necessary to remove as much horn from the surface of a strong sole as will give it the concavity requisite to prevent the shoe from pressing on the sole, and producing lameness. It should also be made sufficiently concave to admit of a picker passing easily round under the shoe, when on ; this can be done to strong feet with safety as well as with advantage, and leaving the sole at the same time of a sufficient substance, which a good smith takes care to ascertain. After having removed a certain portion of the sole, he applies pressure with his thumb, to discover the substance of horn he has left there. If from the quantity that has been removed, he finds the sole somewhat elastic, he should desist from further weakening it. The horn should be removed from the sole to a similar extent, from between the bars and the crust, when the long shoe is applied ; but care must be taken that the former forms a junction with the latter at the heels. This will not only give increased strength to them, but it will also present a wide and firm basis for the heels of the shoes to rest upon. The bars are to be left prominent, if for no other reason than to prevent the

smith from removing any portion of horn from that part of the foot which is under them.

If the bars and the horn which is under them be removed, the substance of the foot in those parts will be much decreased, and the heels will then very soon contract if the horse is in an artificial state. The horn being removed from the surface of the sole of a strong foot as I have here advised, the next thing the smith has to do, is to make the wall or crust of the foot perfectly level, so as to produce an even surface to receive the shoe.

I am not prepared to state how shoes for race-horses are now made; but I very well remember, that those which were formerly in use were very light and narrow; and I conclude that the object in making them in that manner was merely to prevent the horses' feet from breaking. I am decidedly of opinion that such shoes are very improper for any horse, but more particularly for such race-horses as are obliged often to be kept in strong work. Light shoes must be nailed with four nails on each side of the shoe, and these nails must be driven further back towards the heels than is necessary with shoes of more substance and greater width. Unless light shoes are put on in this manner, they are apt to spring a little at the heels when a horse is going a rapid pace on a hard ground; and if this is not immediately attended to, they soon become loose and are thrown. This is not the only inconvenience; for, from these shoes being nailed so far back, the quarters and heels of the horses' feet become, as it were, fixed

by this rim of iron, or sort of shoe ; and which is one very great cause of contraction, as those back parts of the wall or crust of the horse's foot, which are the most elastic parts of it, are prevented from expanding. Another disadvantage attending the use of long, light, narrow shoes is, that they are not of sufficient breadth and substance to prevent very great concussion from taking place in the fore-feet of such craving horses as are often obliged in summer to sweat long lengths over hard ground. I think one of the principal causes of such horses in training and in strong work becoming very groggy in their fore-feet, is their wearing shoes of very little more substance and cover than the plates they run in.

I have for several years past, been much in the practice of having short shoes put on the fore-feet of many of our troop horses, and those belonging to the officers. Such of them as have had strong upright feet that were more or less contracted, I have occasionally sent to exercise on soft ground, keeping their feet moist in the way already mentioned. Finding that they went on very well in short shoes for two or three months at a time, or until their feet have been sufficiently expanded, I was inclined to try how they would go when sent to their duty in such shoes. Having made the experiment, I found that the horses not only did their duty in the field, and on the road, but they also marched very well in those shoes on the hot roads in the height of summer, carrying the dragoon, with the whole of the regimental appointments

weighing, upon an average, from seventeen to twenty stone. These horses marched from fifteen to twenty-five miles per day, for a distance of two hundred miles. On examining the feet of those that wore these short shoes, I found they had very much expanded and that the heels and quarters were quite equal to the wear and tear of the roads; and as there was no complaint made by the men, that their horses did not go equally well in short, as in long shoes, I was induced to try how long horses with strong feet could wear them without inconvenience, and I have had horses in the regiment wear them at head-quarters for upwards of a year.

Major Shirley purchased a horse, with his feet in a bad state, being very much contracted. They had also bad thrushes and corns. This horse's feet were cleaned out and the short shoes applied, the horse kept in regular work on the road and occasionally in the field. In three months, the corns and thrushes got well, and the feet become considerably expanded.

A charger in the regiment belonging to Captain Phillips, had bad contracted feet with diseased frogs and corns. The short shoes were worn by this mare about four months, in which time the feet became much expanded, and the frogs and corns got well. As the mare continued to go on with her duty, both in the field and on the road, and as there was no objection made by the owner of the mare to her wearing the shoes, she continued them for twelve months.

In making short shoes for such race-horses as may wear them, (which are those horses that have feet with

high, strong quarters and heels, with wide crust and good frogs, of which the soles are of course concave), the breadth, length and substance, must of course be regulated according to the weight of the horse and the size of his foot. In order in some measure to guide the smith as to the breadth and substance of such a shoe for a race-horse with a small foot, I will say, that its weight should be from eight to nine ounces, and should be made about two inches shorter than a common long shoe to be applied to such a foot. The surface of the shoe next the foot may be perfectly flat; but the surface next the ground should be gradually bevelled off all round, from the fullering or nailing part to the inner edge, to give the horse a firmer hold on the ground with his feet.

In the fourth plate, figure 5, is represented a foot, with a short stamped shoe and a strong clip at the toe. The heels of the shoe approach to within about two inches of the heels of the foot, to which it is secured by eight countersunk nails. This shoe I recommend to the notice of training grooms when they are doing a little work with their horses in the spring, as, for example, when they are forwarding them in their first preparation; for, on such occasions, horses in training now and then throw their shoes, and more particularly in their sweats; but as this shoe is nailed rather close to the ends of its heels, this sort of thing is not very likely to happen.

Figure 6 is a foot with a fullered short shoe, which has a strong clip at the toe, put on with six nails. I

recommend this shoe for horses that are in gentle work in winter and spring, or for country plate horses that are kept in large loose boxes during winter. I am of opinion, that the feet of those horses last mentioned would be much improved if short shoes were to supersede not only the use of long ones, but also the injurious practice of altogether dispensing with shoes, which was formerly a common custom on those occasions. Nor will the short shoes get into the feet, if the horse is shod, or his shoes removed, at proper intervals; and provided also, that the centre of the web of the shoe at the heels, is placed immediately over the wall or crust of the foot, so that the latter may be in the centre of the heels of the former when nailed on the foot. The two first nail holes, punched in the short shoes, one on each side, may be at a distance of an inch from the centre of the clip. The other nail holes may be placed at a similar distance; but the spaces between the nails must depend on the size of the foot; only observing, that if the horses are in strong work, the last two nail holes should be punched within an inch of the ends of the heels of the shoe; but when race-horses are in gentle work, or out of work, and standing in loose boxes in winter, the shoes will not require being nailed further back than is necessary to keep them in place. At such times, three nails on each side, I think sufficient to keep them secure. No nails having been driven into the quarters and heels, they will be sound and strong, and will have expanded; so that, should it be thought necessary in the

height of summer when the ground is hard, to put long shoes on horses in strong work, their feet will be found to be in a good state to have such shoes applied. But I must again advise, that the long shoes should be made of more substance and cover than they usually were. If made of the same substance and cover as those applied to the feet of race-horses turned out of training, and used as hacks on the road, I am of opinion, that their feet would suffer less from concussion, when in training on hard ground. Aged horses in common use, as coach and post horses, or hacks on the road, that have their feet at all out of order, can no more work in light neat shoes, than an old man with tender feet could travel over hard roads, in a thin pair of pumps.

In the fourth plate, figure 4, is represented a foot, the front part of which is pared to receive the short shoe; the heels, quarters, and frog, are left sufficiently high, so as to be level with the short shoe when put on. In race-horses that have strong, upright feet, they soon get sufficiently high for the purpose, unless their heels are much paired every time they are shod. When the quarters and heels are as above described, the smith, in paring the foot to receive the short shoe, is to do it in the same manner as he would, were he going to apply the long shoe; only observing, that instead of levelling the foot as for the long shoe, he is to leave the ends of the heels of the foot, and the quarters to the ends of the heels of the short shoe, a little, or as much higher as may be necessary to bring the heels of

the shoe and this part of the quarters with the heels of the foot and the frog perfectly level with each other; so that each of the above parts (that is, the heels, the frog, and heels of the shoe,) may equally bear the weight when the horse has his foot in contact with the ground, just as if the long shoe had been applied instead of the short one.

If these shoes are put on as I have here advised, there will not be more weight on the tendons and ligaments of the leg, than when the long shoe is used; at least, I have always found this to be the case. Nor will there be, by any means, so much weight on them, as when a country plate horse has three-quarter plates on, (to run perhaps two or three four-mile heats,) which he almost invariably wears when he is running; that is, if his feet are out of order, for then no other plate can be applied with safety; and when running long lengths in such plates, if the ground is hard, a horse's feet are much exposed, and great concussion takes place in them.

Training grooms who have had much to do with country running are fully aware of this, from their having observed the very painful and heated state of a horse's feet at night, after running the above-mentioned lengths in short plates: and they are also aware, that such a horse's feet get well again after a few days' rest, if properly attended to and kept moist.

This, I think, goes to prove, that to pay attention to horses' feet by endeavouring to keep them as nearly in a state of nature as possible, is quite as necessary as to

adopt the best method of shoeing. But it is to be observed, that short shoes can only be applied to such race-horses' feet as have already been described. They must not on any account be applied to horses' feet that are thin and weak, or that have low heels; neither can they be worn by horses that are become at all feeling in their feet, being what is commonly called, a little groggy, be their feet of whatever strength they may. By way of experiment, I have put short shoes on horses' feet thus diseased, and they could scarcely move in them; but on taking off the short shoes and putting on the long ones of more than common substance and cover, the same horses have afterwards gone comparatively sound; and this arises from the substance and colour of the shoe diminishing in a great degree the concussion produced by the horse's weight when in action and going over hard ground.

If short shoes of substance and cover, are found to answer the purpose of preventing concussion and contraction taking place in strong feet, there can be no objection to their use in other respects; for it is to be observed, that race-horses when in training, are not going a rapid pace down very steep or slippery hills, or on sideland ground, as horses often are that are hunting; and when race-horses are pulled up in concluding either their gallops or sweats, it is almost at all times on level ground, or if otherwise, it is on ground ascending instead of descending, so that there is no danger to be apprehended from their slipping in pulling up if their heels are sound and strong. However, as short

shoes were not worn by race-horses at the time I was living in the stables, I cannot speak from experience how they may answer, farther than from the practice I have already noticed in applying them to the feet of troop horses. Nor do I wish to press this method of shoeing on the notice of trainers, but if they choose to try the short shoes for the purposes, and at the seasons of the year mentioned, I am not aware of any inconvenience that can result from such a trial. On the contrary, if the horses' feet in other respects receive the attention and treatment I have advised, I am of opinion they will be found in a more sound and perfect state than if they wore long shoes.

Previous to concluding this chapter, it may be advisable to offer a few cautionary remarks to owners of horses; as a thorough knowledge of those animals is not so easily obtained as people who keep them are led to imagine. In submitting these observations to the consideration of gentlemen, I am led to hope I may not give offence, which I assure them it is far from my intention of doing. Men of education soon learn to discourse familiarly on most subjects, and none acquire knowledge so readily as sportsmen on the turf. I have had frequent opportunities of hearing gentlemen talk with each other on the condition of their horses, and the best method of shoeing them, &c., as if they really understood all that was necessary to be known on such subjects.

I have already instanced mistakes which have been made with regard to the condition of horses, by those

who have kept them. I have also known the owners of horses oblige a good smith, (much against his will) to attend to the neatness and cleaning out or paring of their horses' feet, and often insisting on light shoes with fine fullering being applied, without ever giving the least attention to the sort of feet the horses may happen to have had.

Theoretical knowledge is certainly very useful, I allow, in teaching or explaining the principles of the different arts and sciences; and that neatness and uniformity in the erecting of a building are much to be admired, I will also admit; but such rules can seldom be brought into practice, either in getting horses into condition, or in shoeing them. That many gentlemen, from practice, know very well how to ride across a country, and that they may be tolerable judges of the shape or make of a horse, and that they may occasionally see some imperfections in them, I will readily concede; but to discover all the imperfections that may at times be present in some horses, and which are often the cause of unsoundness, requires the attention and scrutinizing eye of men, who possess exclusive advantages in that respect, the result of a long practical experience.

The plating of race-horses is often almost the last thing done to them previously to their coming to post —that is, when they are plated on the course. But as this chapter has already run to an extreme length, and as plating may be considered distinct from shoeing, I shall devote a separate chapter to it.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ON PLATING RACE-HORSES.

RACE-HORSES should always be plated before they are brought to post, where it can be done with safety. All men conversant with the turf are fully aware of the very great importance of weight. They consider, and very justly too, that every ounce is of consequence, when horses are supposed to be equally matched, and more particularly when they have to come long lengths,

I shall make but few observations on the plating of such horses as are standing at home stables, as they are principally young ones, particularly at Newmarket, being mostly yearlings and two-year-olds. I have never known the former travel, at least when in training, and the latter but in few instances. If, when trained, they are found to be good ones, they are generally entered for stakes with horses of their own year, and run the usual lengths. It is pretty much the same with the three and four-years-olds as with the younger ones; for if those horses are in any repute, they are

Fig. 1.

Fig. 2.

Fig. 3

Fig. 4

Fig. 5.

Fig. 6.

Figure 1. Is a full plate for a fore foot.—Figure 2. Is a hind plate turned up at both hind heels.
Figure 3. Is a three quarter plate.—Figure 4. Is a foot pared to receive the shoe.
Figure 5. Is a foot with a stamped shoe, put on with eight Countersunk nails.
Figure 6. Is a foot with a fullered shoe, put on with six common nails.

kept in reserve to run for the great stakes at the principal meetings, and they are mostly standing in home stables, where, under the superintendance of training grooms, more than usual care is paid to their feet; and as they neither travel so much nor run so often as country plate horses, their feet (unless naturally defective,) are very strong, with plenty of horn. The shoeing smiths who live in a racing neighbourhood, are generally good hands at plating horses, being constantly in the habit of receiving instructions, and as constantly cautioned by training grooms to be careful in fitting the plates, preserving the feet and driving the nails. These advantages, together with their own experience, in plating the number of horses kept every year by the noblemen and gentlemen of turf celebrity in the different counties where racing is known to be so universally patronized, render them so expert, that with such feet as I have here described, they are seldom liable to accidents in plating horses. Yet it is not impossible but that an accident may sometimes happen in plating horses, even in these stables. It may therefore be advisable to plate such horses as may have good sound feet, and that are standing in stables close to the running ground, the evening prior to their running, after their coming in from exercise On the morning that a horse is going to run, it is usual to walk him out on the heath and there let him take a short canter, merely to see if all is right, and if he is well on his feet and legs. If the horse is observed by the groom to go stiff or short, and if the groom is of opinion that

this is occasioned by any thing wrong about either of the horse's feet, there will be time to remove the plates, and to give the nails less hold or a different direction. The foot may afterwards be relaxed in a bucket of water, so that the horse may be brought to post, and run without much danger of being lamed, if the ground be not too hard.

Horses that may be heavily engaged, as some of those which may be entered for either of the great stakes, the Derby, or the Oaks, at Epsom, or that valuable and interesting stake, the St. Leger, at Doncaster, often stand high in public opinion. Under these circumstances, to make all safe, and to satisfy the public, it is usual, and indeed very proper, to bring good shoeing and plating smiths to attend them, from the different neighbourhoods where large training establishments are kept. This arrangement cannot well extend to country plate horses that are travelling during the summer from one meeting to the other; and from the repeated necessity there is for removing the horses and plates of such horses, their feet are frequently in a very broken and weak state on their return to the home stables in autumn.

The foregoing are remarks which were made by me at a time when I knew but little more about the feet of horses than picking them out and washing them. I have seen some few instances of race-horses' feet being in a bad state, since I have been a Veterinary Surgeon in the Army, and that, too, early in the summer. I am of opinion, from the observations I made in those

instances, that the cause of the diseased state of the feet might be traced to a want of knowledge on the part of both the groom and smith, and not to any neglect of either.

I have had the ordering and arranging of the plating of a few horses in my time, some of which have not had the very best feet; and as I have on such occasions paid more than common attention to the subject, I shall enter upon it, as far as I think necessary, to explain to grooms, head lads, and country shoeing smiths, the most advantageous methods to be adopted in the plating of such feet as from peculiar circumstances may require much care and attention.

There are many shoeing smiths in the country who shoe horses very well; but there are many of them who have but little experience in plating horses, and what is worse, as it frequently happens, they have the most difficult feet to put plates upon.

But I am of opinion, if grooms will take the trouble (and I think they will) of paying proper attention to the following remarks on this subject, they may be enabled to give the country smiths such precautionary instructions and directions as they see necessary; and they may often suggest to them a method of making the plates, and putting them on in difficult cases, not only securely, but without laming their horses; for although, as I have just observed, country smiths may shoe tolerably well, yet if they have not had some experience in putting on plates, or if proper directions be not given them, they may

unintentionally fall into error, and which, with race-horses, I believe most racing men are aware must be guarded against as much as possible.

Whenever horses are to be plated, the groom may go himself, or after the stable hour is concluded, he may send one of the boys, to the smith over-night, with orders for him to attend at the stables in the morning, by the time the horses are returned from exercise, that he may take measure of their feet, and make the plates for such of them as may be going to run on the following day.

The smith, when measuring the horses' feet, commonly makes use of two straws, for the purpose of taking the length with one and the breadth with the other, and if he does not understand figures, he will, of course, do it more correctly this way than by a rule. If there is any difference to be made between the size of the shoe and that of the plate, it is that the latter should be rather less than the former in its circumference round the foot, so that the plate may, to a certain extent, rest in the bed which may have been formed by the shoe. The plate should not, by any means, project beyond the edge of the hoof; for, should a restless, irritable horse have to saddle on the course (which is the case where there is no rubbing house) he may, from ranging about, tread a plate off, unless the precaution is taken of setting the plate level with, or within the edge of the hoof. An accident of this sort not only keeps other horses waiting, but it may create a dispute as to whether the

horses that are ready to start at the time fixed should wait or not.

Now, as the crust or wall of horses' feet which may have been often plated, is more or less broken, the groom should direct the smith as he is measuring the feet, to make his observations on the most sound parts of the crust, and as the nail holes of plates are placed further apart than those of shoes, it sometimes gives the smith the advantage of driving his nails into the more sound parts of the foot. The groom, on such occasions, cannot too strongly point out the necessity of punching the nail holes in such parts of the plate as will immediately correspond with the sound part of the horn, provided those parts are so situated as to admit of the nails being driven into them, and the plate rendered secure without driving the nails too far back from the end of the heels of the plates; or if, to preserve the hoof, the smith can safely drive a nail occasionally into an old hole, it may be done.

From what has been already said, it will appear pretty evident, that the making of plates must vary according to circumstances. As plates are narrow, they cannot well come in contact with the sole, so as to occasion pressure there; they may therefore be made flat on both sides. Whether the horses' plates should be made to come home to the heels of his fore-feet, (and which I shall call full plates) or whether they are to be made short, (which I shall call the three-quarter plates) will depend on circumstances. I shall first describe how the former should be made. The smith is to observe in the making and fitting of this plate,

that the heels of it are to be brought but just up or home to the horse's heels when on, and not to project the least beyond them; and to prevent any hold being taken by the toes of the hind feet, the heels of the fore plates should be bevelled off.

If plates are properly forged, they require little or no rasping, which only renders them weak. Plates for moderate sized horses need scarcely ever exceed in breadth three-and-a-half eighths of an inch. Middle sized, light horses, running short races, and not heats, (more particularly if the ground is soft) may not require them even of that breadth and substance. But for large horses, whose feet are in proportion to their size, the plate should vary accordingly. The fullering or grove, which is made round the centre of the plate, cannot well be too coarse, provided it does not too much weaken the plate. The fullering must be made in the centre, for if it is made to approach too near the outer edge, it will weaken the plate, in which case the smith cannot well get sufficient hold with his nails to keep the plate secure.

The depth of the fullering must be regulated, and the nail holes punched in it, according to the substance of the plate and the size of the nails which are likely to be used in putting it on; that is to say, that by a smart blow or two from the hammer after the nails are driven, the heads of them should be buried and on a level with the surface of the plates.

The situation in which each nail hole should be placed, will depend in a great measure on the size of the plates. In good feet, the nail holes should begin

where the toe may be said to end. There should be four nails on each side ; the first and second nail holes from the toe may be punched an inch or more apart. Be this as it may, the smith must observe to regulate the distance here between these two holes so as to admit of his punching the third within the distance of about an inch and a half of the end of the heel of the plate ; and in the centre of the space there left, between the third nail and the end of the plate, the last hole of the four should be punched ; otherwise the plates, particularly of the fore-feet, will spring at the heels, from the concussion produced by severe running on hard ground.

Horses that are kept in reserve for particular races, are consequently but seldom running. Their shoes and plates not being often removed, their feet (unless they have been neglected) are sound and strong, with good heels and plenty of horn to nail to. For such horses, the full plate is to be preferred, as it gives the horse a more firm and level tread with his fore-feet than the three-quarter plate can possibly do.

The three-quarter plate is made in most respects like the full plate, except in its length. Being shorter, it seldom requires for its security more than three nails on each side ; and as in the first-mentioned plate, where the toe ends, the first nail hole should be punched ; the divisions being so arranged by the smith, as to the distance from each other, as to admit of the last hole being punched within half an inch of the end of the plate.

A three-quarter plate is more generally used for

country plate horses, their feet having got out of order from the repeated running and travelling, together with the necessity there is of frequently removing their shoes and plates. The plate must not be made to approach nearer the end of the horse's heels than there is horn sufficiently sound for it to rest upon; and it should also be sufficiently strong at those parts to give the two last nails a firm hold, that the plate may not spring at the heels when the horse is running.

Some horses' feet will allow of a plate of this sort coming within half an inch of the end of the heels; and others may not allow of its coming within an inch or more. It is the soundness and substance of the horn at the horse's heels and quarters which must regulate the length of the plates.

Country plate horses, if they are good ones and properly selected, are generally of pretty strong constitutions; and when they are sent on a circuit, or what is commonly called, a roving commission, it is with a view to pick up what plates they can; and as the season advances, unless great care is taken of them, their feet, from the causes already mentioned, get into a very indifferent state; so much so, that it is often difficult for even a good smith to put their plates on with safety, and at the same time, securely.

The hind plates may be made as the fore ones, and may be brought well home to the heels, as the heels of the hind feet are mostly in a good state. If a horse is a long striding one, and a free runner, he is likely to be rather a difficult one at his turns; and although

it may be bad judgment to run such a horse over a small round course, yet, if such should happen, it may be advisable for the safety of both the rider and the horse, to give the latter some hold of the ground, by turning up the heels of his hind plates. But with a horse of the middle size, that has a short but quick stride, gives his race kindly, and is handy at his turns, there may be no occasion to turn up the plates. However, an experienced training groom before his horse is plated, generally puts himself in possesion of the sort of course he is going to run over, by previously cantering his back over it, and he should afterwards regulate the plating of his horse according to circumstances.

The plates being made according to the directions given, the groom must then decide whether they shall be put on in the stable or on the course. This will depend on the distance the former is from the latter, and on the sort of feet the horse may have.

Many of our country courses have not a stable near them. On such occasions, the horses are often obliged to stand at stables in the adjoining town, which is sometimes at a very considerable distance, perhaps two or three miles. This is much too long a length for horses to walk in their plates; indeed under almost any circumstances, it is too far, unless it be on turf. If there is no other way to the running ground except on the hot surface of a hard turnpike road, I should strongly recommend the groom to have his horse plated

on the course, more particularly if the three-quarter plates are to be used.

I shall now make some few remarks on taking the shoes off from race-horses' feet, preparatory to the putting on of the plates. When the wall or crust of a horse's feet is strong, and there is plenty of horn to nail to, and the soles are of a good substance, the shoes may be taken off in the usual manner, without much risk of injuring the foot. The smith, in taking them off, first knocks up the clinches with his buffer; then with one side of his pincers placed between the shoe and sole of the foot, and with the other side of them placed on the outside and upper edge of the shoe, he gives sufficient strength in forcing them downwards and inwards, to draw the nails, and the shoe comes off in the pincers. But with horses that have thin weak feet, this method of taking off the shoes must never be had recourse to. I have observed smiths, who were not much in the habit of taking shoes off from horses' feet use more strength than judgment. On such occasions, if they would give themselves time for a moment to examine the sort of feet from which they may be going to remove shoes, they would find that to use less of the former, and more of the latter, would not only be considerably safer for the horses, but much more advantageous to themselves; for by doing the thing properly, they would preserve the foot, and have more horn to nail to.

In removing shoes from bad feet, the smith should first knock up the clinches with one end of the buffer,

and with the other he should start the nails, and then draw them out with the pincers one by one; the shoe would then immediately fall off. This is the way in which the groom should insist on the horse's shoes being taken off, so that the horn may be preserved as much as possible.

In putting on a race-horse's plate, it will be observed that, if the horse's shoes should not have been removed from his feet for the space of three weeks, the hoof will, during that period, have grown, and with the action and weight of the horse, the shoe will, in some degree, have imbedded itself into the foot. After the shoe is taken off, nothing should be done to the foot if it can be avoided, as (if the plate is made as I direct) there will be a sort of seat or bed round the crust in which the plate will lay, and this will in some measure support and assist in keeping it in its place. However, it may sometimes be necessary, after the shoe is off, to run the rasp very lightly round the lower edge of the crust. If the groom and smith see that it is requisite to remove a very small portion of horn, so as to level the foot that the plate may have an even surface to lay on, it must be done; but this is all that can be wanting. The heels of weak feet should be kept strong, that is to say, nothing should unnecessarily be removed from them.

Little need be said with regard to the nails which are used in putting on plates. The sizes which are in general use, are from No. 4 to No. 6, depending much

on the size of the foot, and weight of the plates. They should be tough, and of the best quality; and as it is not necessary to drive them very high up in good feet, the shorter they are, in reason, the better, as the clinches will not be so coarse as a long nail; and this is an object worth attending to, more particularly with such horses as have thin crusts. The smith, having carefully sized, straightened, and judiciously pointed his nails, according to the sort of feet he is going to drive them into, next commences putting on the plates. If he takes but common care, there is not much difficulty or danger to be apprehended in the driving the nails into such feet as are strong, sound, and good. But without the greatest care and attention possible on the part of a good smith, difficulty will be encountered, and danger is to be apprehended in driving nails into weak, broken, and unsound feet.

A smith, on putting plates on such feet, must be very careful, and pitch his nails a little in, or out, so as to give the proper direction to each nail in passing it safely either low down or high up through such parts of the wall or crust of the foot. As he approaches towards the quarters and heels, it will be necessary for him to reduce the size of the nails, not only to prevent those parts from being much broken, but to give to each nail here, of whatever size it may be, a safe and secure hold; or when it is necessary to get a hold higher up in the foot, and when a common shoeing nail is used for the purpose, the smith should take care

in beating out the nail, to draw it rather fine at the point, that in driving it he may not break the upper part of the hoof more than can be avoided.

The nails being driven, the smith gives a smart blow or two with his hammer on the head of each nail, so as to drive it home and bring the head upon a level with the surface of the plates; he then nips off the points with his pincers, and knocks down the clinches. But a smith who may not have been accustomed to plate horses is very likely (unless he is cautioned by the groom) to do in this case as he would in putting on shoes in the common way, which is, before he knocks down the clinches, to make a nick with the edge of his rasp under each clinch, so as to let the clinches into the hoof. This should never be done in plating horses, as it only tends to weaken those parts in the hoof, and more particularly if the crust or wall of the foot should be thin. There is another error into which a smith may fall who is unaccustomed to plate horses, if he is not cautioned. The error to which I allude, is that of his improperly using his rasp in what he calls finishing off the foot, by rasping over almost the whole surface, and thereby weakening the crust. This is not the only disadvantage likely to result from this method, for as the clinches of the nails used for putting on plates are small, the most trifling rub with a rasp may cut through them, or perhaps so much weaken them as to render the plates insecure. If there is any occasion to use the rasp after the plate is put on, it can be only to rub down the head of a common

shoeing nail which may project, when the fullering is not sufficiently coarse to let in the head of it.

I will, for example, suppose an instance at a country meeting at which it is the custom to run heats. When a horse has run the first heat he is pulled up and rode to the scale for the jockey to weigh ; after which he is led out from the crowd to some convenient place to be rubbed over, and to be got ready for the second heat. This being done, and the horse's clothes put out, the boy who looks after him, takes up his feet, and if necessary, he picks them out. But there is one thing which the boy knows to be very necessary, and that is to see that his horse's plates are not only on, but that nothing has happened to them ; that is to say, he must see that the plate is neither broken nor sprung at the heel. Such things will sometimes occur when the ground is hard, and the plates light, or when they are not nailed close to the end of the heels. If a plate is thrown or broken, a fresh one must be put on. If a plate has sprung at the heel, it must be put right, which may be sometimes done without taking it off, provided the horse has very strong sound feet. When a plate can be put right on the feet without removing it, or without any risk of laming the horse, the method of doing it is this—the smith should place his pincers (shut or nearly so) between the plate and the foot, and by giving a gentle blow or two with his hammer on the end or heel of the latter, he brings it straight again; after which, as the foot is strong, he may, in order to prevent the same thing from recurring, take fresh hold

higher up, or by making use of a larger sized nail in the same hole, secure the plate. But when a plate may have sprung at the heel of a weak foot, the groom must never allow the smith to put the plate right on the foot, or the odds are that the horse will be lamed. The plate must be taken off and brought in place on any hard level surface that will answer the purpose. To prevent any thing of this sort happening to a horse's plates, the greatest care and attention should be paid by the groom to the making of them, as also to the putting them on ; for when it happens that a horse's plates get at all wrong, it sometimes occasions great trouble and delay, if the horse be high-couraged or impetuous, and more particularly, should he have been called upon rather severely, or perhaps punished a little in running the first heat. From these causes, together with the noise and bustle of the crowd, the horse becomes so irritable and anxious, that it is at times very difficult, where there may be a stable or rubbing house for the horse to go into, for the boy who looks after him (even with the assistance of the groom,—aye, and I will give him his hack into the bargain) to pacify such a horse and get him to stand quiet on the course for the smith to put the plate aright on his foot ; or he may perhaps be obliged to take it off for this purpose. Such occurrences shew how necessary it is for the smith to be in attendance on the race-ground, during the day the horse has to run. Indeed, unless he is on the spot with his tools, spare plates, and plenty of nails properly sorted and

well pointed, the horse cannot (if a plate gets wrong) start for the second or perhaps the third heat, the consequences of which are too self-evident to need explanation.

From incessant travelling and running a horse's feet soon get out of order, unless great care be taken. When they are in that state, the horse must run in three-quarter plates, if he has to run long lengths, or heats; and if the ground be hard, his feet will suffer much from concussion, and become very hot and painful.

If the horse, after running, has a long way to walk to his stable, perhaps on a hard road, his plates should be carefully taken off on the course, and his shoes should afterwards be as carefully put on. But when a horse walks from the course to his stable in his plates, I have known some grooms, after having the plates taken off, let the horse stand without shoes. Of this I do not approve. A horse with his feet in the state I have described, cannot well bear the weight of his body on them without shoes; and until the heat and pain in his feet subside, he is mostly seen lying down. I should recommend grooms not to let a horse, under the above circumstances, stand without shoes. It is better by far to put them lightly on, driving the nails into the old holes, and turning down the clinches as easy as possible. A horse can then bear his weight, and will stand or move about in his stall or box with much more ease to himself, than when he has no shoes on.

Remedies for the relief of his feet can be much better applied, but not bran poultices, as used to be the custom. These are not good on such occasions, as the weight of the horse when standing spreads them abroad, and the heat of the feet soon absorbs the moisture of the poultice; and they are inconvenient for horses either to stand or lie down in. It was the custom, and a very excellent one, on a horse's arriving at his stable after running, to foment his legs and feet. I should afterwards put wet pads round the crust of the fore-feet, and stop the bottoms with wet tow, before the stables are shut up at night. The pads and tow should be fresh wetted every stable hour.

If the horse be a craving one, and is likely to lay by for ten or twelve days, I should recommend a dose of physic to keep him light and to assist in getting his feet cool. As soon as the inflammation and soreness had left his feet, the wet pads should be removed, and the tar ointment occasionally applied round the crust of the feet, always keeping the bottoms constantly stopped with wet tow. This is the treatment I should apply to the feet of horses that may have got out of order from the causes mentioned. If a horse's feet are weak and his heels low, and he has to run on hard ground, it would be advisable to let him run in his shoes.

A horse that has strong feet may be plated in the stable, and walk from thence to the course, and after running, he may return to the stables in his plates, and continue wearing them until he has performed his

engagements for the meeting, which seldom exceeds three days. The groom will not want to do any work with the horse, as his first day's race will keep the length in him. If he requires any thing in the way of exercise, it can only be walking, or at farthest, a short hill gallop, both of which he may accomplish in his plates, without injury to his feet.

CHAPTER XXIV.

ON BREAKING RACING COLTS.

Noblemen and gentlemen who breed racing stock with a view of either running or selling the produce, generally keep an experienced stud groom to manage an establishment of this description, whose method and manner of handling the young ones, even from the time they are sucklings, is such as will bring them quite gentle and familiar, in comparison with other common stock, which are allowed to range in large fields in a wilder state. The former is certainly an advantage; for when colts and fillies were a year and a half old, it was a custom with some men who bred principally for sale, to break and try their young ones, particularly early, so as to ascertain the power of speed each colt or filly possessed; and according to the result of these trials, they regulated the price of each. On such occasions, young ones were generally taken

up from their paddocks about the latter end of August; and if, in a month or five weeks, they could be got to ride quiet, and follow each other up a short gallop, they were considered sufficiently broke to be tried for sale; after which, they were returned again to their paddocks, to remain there until sold.

But, noblemen and gentlemen who run the produce of their own stud, and who are not particularly anxious about selling, do not have their colts and fillies taken up before the latter end of September, or early in October, either as yearlings or two-year-olds, just as such breeders may best approve; and if such young ones have been properly treated, they are, when brought into the stables, but little alarmed at the people and the things about them.

Those who have their establishments in the neighbourhood of Newmarket, and who have also their private training grooms and stables in that town, send their young ones there to be broke and tried. When the groom's time is not fully occupied with the number of horses he has in training, he may, with the assistance of the head lad and some of his best riding boys, most likely arrange the breaking of the colts himself: otherwise they are sent to the colt-breaker's residing in the neighbourhood. But whether they are broke at home, or sent to the colt-breaker's for that purpose, is not very material. If the people who undertake the management of them are in all respects well acquainted with what they undertake to do, the thing is done precisely the same in one training stable as in another.

The main object is to give them plenty of time until they are perfectly broke.

Other gentlemen who have large breeding establishments, and who keep in their employ proper persons to make the necessary arrangements in every department of it, as a stud groom, a colt-breaker, a training-groom, and good riding boys, with other requisites, such as suitable ground near the stables to exercise on, or a park sufficiently large to train horses in, with a two or four mile course in it. Such gentlemen as have on their estates the above-mentioned conveniences, like, as well for the sake of secrecy as for the pleasure and amusement it affords them, to have their horses managed at home. Other breeders who have not those conveniences on their premises, are obliged to send the produce of their stock to their own private stables, or to public stables, to be broke, tried, and trained; and these stables may be, and indeed often are, at a very great distance. Under these circumstances, I would advise breeders to have their colts handled or broke in a temporary manner at home; although they may not have an opportunity of doing this effectually, it may be done to a certain extent by the stud groom, and men on the premises. There will be no necessity for backing them; it will be found sufficient to put the tackle on them, and have them led out for a week or ten days, on the roads or downs, and now and then lounged. This sort of treatment will bring them tolerably steady, which is a point worth attending to, prior to their commencing a journey, as there is afterwards

less difficulty and danger in travelling them. Unless this is done, they are very troublesome in passing carts and carriages on the road; and in struggling when frightened, they may get loose and injure themselves. Whenever they travel, having been only temporarily broke, they should be led in cavesons with boots on their fore legs. If they have a long way to travel, they should also be provided with boots for their hind legs.

To shew the necessity of handling or temporarily breaking young ones before they are permitted to travel, I will relate an occurrence which happened to some yearlings that were travelling from the stables in Gloucestershire, belonging to Mr. Cook, to some others in his occupation, adjacent to Maidenhead Thicket. It was the spring of the year, that Mr. Cook had ordered these race-horses, accompanied by the head lad and two boys (I was one of them), to be sent to the Maidenhead stables; and to travel with us, were four unbroken racing yearlings, led in halters by four countrymen, hired for the purpose, the whole being put under the care of the head lad, who was strictly charged to be careful of them. The first two days of our journey, the colts, as might be expected, were troublesome, and often alarmed by the different objects they met on the road; but as none of them got loose, the head lad gave himself very little concern about them, and we were often a long way in front with our horses, and no doubt we were some way forward when the circumstance happened which I am about to

notice. On arriving at about the middle of Marlbro' Downs, on the third day, whether the men had become careless and off their guard, or whether the colts, from seeing so open a country, had made greater efforts than usual to get loose, I cannot say; but loose they all got, and wild and unbroke as they were, they traversed the open plain, gambolling about for some hours, very much to the annoyance of the lad, who at length became seriously alarmed for the safety of this part of his charge. He was at a loss for some time to know what steps he should take to regain them. At last, however, he made up his mind that we should strip the horses, and ride after the colts. We then proceeded a little further to some men who were at work mending the road, and in their care we left our horses' clothes, muzzles, &c. We then put on our saddles, and after giving directions to the men who had been leading the colts to follow us, we went after them. After some hours riding, they allowed us to get close up to them, and one by one, we got them again, to the no small gratification of the lad into whose care they had been given. Now had these colts, before they left the home stables, been but partially broke, and had been led in cavesons, nothing of the sort could well have happened.

I remember, shortly after these colts arrived at their destination, the groom, by way of giving them exercise, and bringing them handy, used to make the boys lead them every day, between stable hours, round a paddock. I was at this time very small, and the colt I was leading soon began his gambols, and kicked me

very severely on the leg, and would no doubt have got away from me, had not the groom, who was standing by, looking on, come to my assistance. I recollect, he gave me a good shaking and some abuse, and I should, no doubt, have felt his ash-plant smartly over my shoulders (for he was rather familiar with his boys in this way), but, luckily for me, he did not happen to have it with him. I was sent back to the stables with orders to send a bigger boy to lead the colt, which is what the groom ought to have done in the first instance, as when a colt once gets the better of a boy, he is very apt to try it again.

Let us, for the sake of example, and merely to shew how racing colts are broke, consider a number of yearlings to be taken up from the paddocks of noblemen or gentlemen who, having a large racing establishment, are breeding on an extensive scale, and train and run their own produce. Instead of sending them to be broke at the stables of a colt breaker, we will consider that a man well qualified for breaking racing colts is kept on the above establishment.

The month of October, and thereabouts, is generally the time that colts come up, which are to be effectually broke; and it is about this time that many of the horses of a certain age are put out of training, and are removed from their stables to loose houses to winter. In these stables, or any others on the premises answering the purpose, the colts and fillies may be put; only observe to class them properly, that is, the colts in one stable and the fillies in another.

Having thus arranged them, the next thing to be done in the stables, is to teach them to stand, tied up in the stalls. The collars and reins used for the purpose, should be very firm and good; and care should be taken, that the top part of the head of the collar is fixed close to the back part of the colt's ears. Some of these may be a little unruly at first, and hang back a few times, but if they find they cannot get loose after repeated attempts, they become reconciled.

They should now have their feet cleaned out and properly shod. In first accustoming colts to be dressed, they should be looked after by the big boys, until they come to stand quiet to be wisped and brushed over, and the other necessary operations, such as combing out their manes and tails, and picking out and washing their feet. They should be brought gradually to the habit of being properly dressed, with as little annoyance as possible. They should always be accustomed to wear rollers in the stables, with a girth round the chest, attached on each side to the lower end of the pad of the roller by a strap. This will prevent the roller from getting into the flanks of those that get light in their work. The girth being thus used, they will be less shy of a breast cloth when it is first put on. Some of them may be restless on their being first brought into the stables, and may be much inclined to paw and tumble the bedding about. Those which indicate a disposition of this sort, should have the fetters buckled on round the pastern joints, and continue to wear them until they are brought to stand perfectly quiet.

The breaking of yearlings or two-year olds, was formerly a business much hurried, and was thought by some grooms not to be of much importance; but it should never be considered in this light, for, however promising in appearance, or however well-bred a colt may be,—whatever properties he may possess, the sort of racer he will become must greatly depend on the breaking; as, from bad management, he may be totally spoiled.

Horses, having very retentive memories, are seldom made completely to forget whatever unruly tricks or habits they acquire from being improperly handled in the breaking. Therefore, whether they are broke at home, or sent out for the purpose, it is highly necessary that the colt-breaker to whom they are entrusted should be a man of experience, who thoroughly understands what he is going about. Besides being a good horseman, he should be a man of excellent temper, never allowing his passion to get the better of his discretion when persevering with a colt. A man who has been brought up from a boy in racing stables is to be preferred, as he will know better how to forward them for what they are intended, and will do more with them in considerably less time than colt-breakers who are accustomed only to break colts for general purposes.

I will now treat on the subject of breaking. The first step, is putting on the cavesons; but before the colts are led out, long boots should be put on their fore legs; for when they first go out, they pull and

hang about, and will sometimes plunge a little, and in so doing, they will now and then give themselves blows on their legs, and thereby bruise and inflame them. They had better wear long boots while they are lounging. When the colts are in from exercise, the groom or colt-breaker may observe what part of the boots may or may not be marked from blows, and can accordingly change them for short ones. There may sometimes be even goers which may not appear to require boots, but it is rather a dangerous experiment to attempt working colts without first putting on either short or long boots.

The number of colts that should be got ready to go out at the same time at different periods during the day, must depend upon the number of men and lads the colt-breaker has to assist him. There should at first be two to each colt; and each man or lad who is to have the principal charge in the handling of a colt, should be selected from among those who have had the most experience in this way.

On their first being taken out, a steady lad should walk in the rear, in case any colt should hang back, to urge him quietly on by flourishing his whip or ash plant, but not to strike him. Colts with their cavesons and boots on, and thus attended, may be led out to the downs, or into a large paddock. At either place they may be taught to be led quietly about. As soon as they become tractable in this way, attempts may be made to lounge them, by first walking them in a small circle to the right or to the left; and when

they know how to go round at this pace, they may be quietly urged on into a trot, gradually increasing the size of the circle by giving them more length of rein. In three or four days, or when they go boldly and freely at full length of the rein each way in the lounge for fifteen or twenty minutes, having by degrees been brought to this pace and time of lounging, the mouthing bits, rollers, and cruppers, may be put on them.

It may here be necessary for me to give a short description how the two latter should be made. The roller may have a hook in the centre of the pad, but certainly a ring attached on the lower part of each side of the pad, for the purpose of buckling on the side reins. In the front or bottom part of the pad, straps should be attached, as also to that part of the crupper, which, when on, is immediately over the colt's loins. These straps should hang down each side of the crupper as low as the colt's houghs. On the near side where the crupper divides to admit the colt's tail being inserted into it, there should be a buckle to facilitate the putting of it on. When colts are out at exercise in this sort of tackle, these straps, from their action, together with the wind blowing them about, are almost invariably striking against their legs, and lapping under their bellies; and although they are a little annoyed by the tackle when first put on, they soon become accustomed to feel the straps about them, which indeed is what is intended they should do. By these means they are taught not to be alarmed when the wind blows a

rider's coat against their sides, or when the wind is strongly blowing the clothes against them; or when race-horses are travelling, it sometimes happens, from the neglectful manner in which the boys put on the different things about their horses, and by their not making them sufficiently secure, that a breast-cloth may get loose and hang down about a horse, or a muzzle improperly put on, may hang down too low about him; and from either of these circumstances, a horse which has not been broke in such tackle as I have just described, may become alarmed, and will make great efforts to get loose.

Colts should be attended in this way, until they are sufficiently forward in their breaking to be entrusted entirely to the care of one person, under the superintendence of the colt breaker. For the first two or three days of their having the mouthing bits put on them, the bits should be allowed to play loosely in their mouths; and in cruppering them, they should be handled boldly and without fear. The hair should be well cleared out from between the dock and the crupper; nor should the latter be drawn up too tight, at first. The roller should also be tightened very gradually; for if colts are suddenly girthed up tight, most of them will set up their backs and plunge, and if they contract the habit of doing this, it sometimes becomes a difficult task to break them of it.

A horse which may have acquired this habit from being badly managed in his breaking, requires great

care and attention in saddling whenever he is going to run, or he will most likely throw his jockey. The groom is obliged to begin saddling such a horse much earlier than any other; and when the saddle is put on, the girth should be strained up but just tight enough to keep it in situation. The horse may then be walked about for a short time. It is at intervals in this way that the girths should be tightened, and when the saddle is made secure, and the surcingle put on, the boy who looks after the horse should be put up to walk him about, until the horses he may be going to start with, are all saddled; and to prevent an accident, or false start, the boy may give him a canter before the jockey is put up to go to the post with him. But it is much against a horse that is flighty, or that is easily alarmed, to be so long saddling, and to be thus annoyed before he comes to post. The greatest care is therefore necessary to be observed on first girthing colts. It should be done very gradually, so that they may not acquire a habit of plunging.

When colts have had this tackle on two or three days, and have been lounged, and walked on the downs three or four hours each day, the next step is gradually to bear them up, which should be done by attaching the side reins to the bits and rollers, but they should not be strained too tight at first. They should be shortened each day a hole at a time. From this treatment their mouths will become sensible to the pressure of the bit, and they will then get their heads in of themselves.

As some colts may take a little less time in breaking than others, the colt breaker should now and then stop such of them as he may see have moist mouths, and that are getting pretty forward. Placing himself in front of any such colt, and taking hold of each side of the check of the bit, he may, by a gentle pressure, feel the state of the colt's mouth; and if he finds it tolerably sensible to the pressure of the bit, he may, by applying pressure to it at short intervals, get him to rein back a little. Let the colt stand, and make much of him; this will give him a notion of stopping or reining back by pressure being applied to the bit when he is rode. But it must be done in a very gentle way, and he should then be suffered to walk forward again. As each colt progressively improves, he should be handled in this way.

Having now got thus far forward in their breaking, and having left off noticing the straps hanging about them, it may not be amiss now and then to lead such of them as are intended for country running, on such public roads as are level and good, and which are not too much crowded with vehicles, merely with a view to accustom them to the different objects they are likely to meet when travelling from one meeting to another.

As soon as they are sufficiently reconciled to the different objects on a road, so as to walk boldly on, without noticing what they meet, the men walking by their side, instead of walking on or before and leading them, they may desist from frequenting the roads. The colt breaker should now direct the men as they are walking

by the side of the colts, in going to and returning from exercise, to put their arms gently over the roller, and each man, with his ash-plant, may lightly, but quietly, keep tapping his colt on his fore and hind quarters, to accustom him to the use of either the ash-plant or the whip; and with a craving colt, a little more strength may now and then be used, with a view of giving a colt of this description a notion of moving on and more readily exerting himself from the application of the whip.

When colts have been sufficiently practised to this sort of treatment, they may next be brought to wear the saddle. Each saddle should have three girths—two in front, and a back girth; this last one not only assists in keeping the saddle steady, but by wearing it, colts become less shy, when on first going into training, they have a body sweater or sheet lapped round them. There may be also a crupper to each saddle, similar to the one attached to the rollers; and the straps, before and behind, as with the rollers, may be buckled on to the saddles.

For the first few times of putting on the saddle, a little caution is necessary. The colt breaker should take the colt's head, and should at the same time caress him. There should be a lad on each side; the one on the off side, before he puts the saddle on, should take care to place the girths and straps over the seat of it; and after the crupper is on, he should hand the girths quietly to the lad on the near side, who should not pull

them up too tight at first. The stirrups may be allowed to hang down, and when the girths are drawn up sufficiently tight, the surcingle may be put on.

For a few days, the colts go on at their usual exercise of lounging and walking about the downs for three or four hours a day, or for such further time as may be thought necessary to steady those that may be rather more flighty and unruly than the rest. But the time of their being at exercise should in some measure be regulated by the state of their condition; for it is to be observed, that the flesh comes off young ones rather rapidly. It is therefore necessary, under these circumstances, to attend particularly to their constitutions.

About this time of his breaking, the colt should be accustomed to be led by the colt-breaker, he himself riding on his hack. This is very necessary before a colt is backed, as it accustoms him to see the man above him. Having been used to be thus led, he should be handled and fondled by the people about, in every possible way, previous to his being backed; and the day on which he is to be mounted, he may be kept a little longer working in the lounge, or may be led about an hour or two longer than usual. A small paddock, in which he may at times have been accustomed to be exercised, will be as convenient a place as any other for this sort of thing; or he may be taken to the ground on which he has usually been lounged. It should be a calm, still day; there should be nothing to alarm him until he has become quite familiar with his rider.

For the first few times of mounting a colt, or rather until he stands quiet, there should be three men present. The colt-breaker should place himself in front of the colt, taking hold of each side of the bit, and a man on the off side should have hold of the stirrup-leather. While the man on the near side (who of course should be a good horseman) is making attempts to mount, the one on the off side should give the necessary weight or strength in bearing down on the stirrup-leather, and yield his weight or strength as occasion may require, to keep the saddle from moving out of its place, and thereby annoying the colt at the time the man on the near side is making attempts to mount and dismount, which he should do by first putting his foot into the stirrup, and then taking it out again ; but of course taking great care that his foot does not touch the colt's side. This he may, perhaps, more easily accomplish, by lengthening his stirrup-leathers a few holes. He may repeat this once or twice, if he finds the colt does not draw himself in, nor bend his body from him, nor yet shift his position. Having got his foot into the stirrup, he may (taking care that his toe does not come in contact with the colt's side) raise himself gradually up from the ground, until he is perfectly upright, and bear, for a few moments, his whole weight on the stirrup. The colt-breaker should, just at this period, endeavour, by kindness, to engage the colt's attention, while the man who is mounting may put his leg gently over, and quietly seat himself in the saddle ; and for

the little time he is sitting here, he should make much of the colt. He should then take up the reins, but at first he should handle them cautiously. The colt-breaker should now lead the colt, and the man on his back should sit perfectly still, and unless he is obliged for his own safety, he should not immediately press his knees or calves of his legs too strongly against the colt's sides. If he feels himself setting up his back, and thinks that he is inclined to make a bound or two, the rider must, of course, sit firm and well down in the saddle, and endeavour to keep the colt's head up. The colt-breaker should check the caveson-rein, and also assist in keeping up the colt's head. They should both keep working quietly at his head until he desists. He should then be led a few times each way round the lounge; if he appears tolerably quiet, he may be pulled up and made much of, and then led about on the down with the man on him, and the colt-breaker riding by the side of him on his hack.

As soon as the colt is perfectly reconciled to his rider, he may be rode home. The man should take great notice of him before he dismounts, and also after he has dismounted, previously to putting him in the stable.

In the breaking of a number of colts, it will be found that some few of them will require more time and perseverance than others. Before mounting such colts, it may be as well to work them a little longer than the others; and at the time of mounting a colt of this description, it may not be amiss to let a lad stand

by, with some corn in a sieve, and as he is directed, give him a little to eat. Feeding a colt in this way, when he is hungry or fatigued, will very much prevent his noticing what is going on with regard to mounting and dismounting; that is, if he is quietly and properly handled, and also, at the same time, made much of. When mounted, the rider should remain upon such a colt, until he leads about perfectly quiet. The rider should occasionally pull him up and caress him, and let him have a mouthful of corn now and then. Previously to dismounting him, he should be made much of by the rider, as also after he is dismounted, before he is put into the stable.

This sort of colt should be mounted and dismounted with the greatest care, so as not to alarm him, and he should also every day be led, until he is perfectly reconciled to his rider; and on his first being allowed to be rode without leading, he should be put in the midst of a string of colts, with which he is being broke.

If the colt-breaker has an idea that the colt will plunge much on being first mounted, it would be well to mount such a colt in a paved street, where, not having good foot hold, he will be rather afraid to plunge. Horses that are restive seldom set up with their riders in a paved town; they are generally cunning enough not to begin till they have pretty good foot hold, either on the turnpike road, or on the turf.

Giving time and taking pains with colts in this way according to their different tempers, will give them confidence, and they soon stand quiet of themselves

to be mounted and dismounted, and they will then most of them go quietly by the guidance of their riders any where they choose to direct them. Their cavesons may now be left off, and in place of them, plain or head-stall martingals or running reins, as occasion may require, should be substituted, to enable their riders to get their heads in place.

The men and lads who may have been the most accustomed to ride young ones, should continue to ride them under the direction of the colt-breaker, from whom they should receive instructions as to the manner in which each colt should be rode, so as to endeavour to bring them all to ride well and with good mouths. To accomplish this, requires a light hand in the application of the pressure with the bit on the colt's mouth. It should be done by the rider's giving and taking by gentle pulls, and thereby keeping the colt's mouth alive to the pressure of the bit. The rider should occasionally gently press the calves of his legs and heels to the colt's sides to urge him on and up to the bit, pulling him up and letting him stand for a few moments, and then reining him back a little, and again moving him forward, teaching him to turn and go in any direction that may be required of him, treating him at the same time with kindness. Some of the colts may not be so forward as others in regard to their mouths. These should be put to stand for an hour every day on the bit after they come in from exercise, at the same time taking care to fasten them up to the pillar reins, and to bear them up to the saddle, or what

is much to be preferred, to a spring cross, until their mouths become more perfect.

There may be some few which may have one side of their mouths more forward than the other, and this arises from the same attention not having been paid in handling that side as the other. This is a matter of importance, and the colt-breaker should be very attentive to it. He should ride all the colts in turn himself, and if he finds a colt's mouth uneven,—that is, one side of the mouth more sensible to the pressure of the bit than the other, he should either continue to ride such colt himself, or have him rode immediately under his direction by a man of experience, who should feel and handle that side of the mouth more frequently than the other; and as soon as this side becomes equally sensible with the other, he should, now and then, by lightly handling the bit, bring the colt's head round towards his own knee; and he should be frequently turned on this side. The other side of the mouth must not, however, in the mean time he neglected.

All race-horses, from the manner in which they are held by the boys when at exercise, pull more or less in their work; but this is of little consequence, provided they pull fair; that is, if their mouths are even, and equally sensible on both sides to the pressure of the bit, otherwise they are very difficult to guide. As soon as their heads can be got sufficiently up and in place, and their mouths are perfectly sensible on both sides to the pressure of the mouthing bit, a second sort

of snaffle may be used, and several should every day be walked out together, in line, on the downs, at a distance of two or three lengths from each other. They should be exercised in this way, and gradually brought accustomed to every thing they may have to be put to, or that may be required of them either in training or in running.

When got ready in the morning, with their saddles and bridles on, and turned round in the stalls, they should be accustomed to be mounted there, and rode out of the stables into the yard, and there walked about until their saddles are settled to their backs, or rather until they have done setting up their backs, as some of them will most likely do after being girthed up tight, which by this time they ought to bear without much resistance. The next thing to which they should be trained, is the noise and bustle of a crowd, and the place, of all others, to bring colts to face a crowd in running, is certainly near the rails of a course at a racing meeting. These opportunities, except at Newmarket, are not to be met with often enough at country courses, so as to give colts the confidence which it is necessary they should have in running home by the rails. Therefore colt breakers, who may be breaking racing colts in different parts of the country, should frequent the neighbouring markets with such as may not be intended to be sent to Newmarket.

The colt breaker, in first going to those places, should ride a hack in front of the colts; but they are not immediately to be taken into the body of the

crowd; they should be suffered to stand at first and look on. They are to be brought by degrees into the most crowded parts, observing, at the same time, to avoid any risk. They may be a little alarmed at first, but with good riding boys up, and kind and gentle treatment, they soon acquire confidence, even in places of this sort; and it is absolutely necessary to take them into such situations, for unless they will come freely up the rails of a course and boldly face the crowd in running, they can be but of little use as race-horses. In riding them on the high roads to a market, some of them may be alarmed at the different objects they meet. Whenever this occurs, they are by no means to be resolutely forced up to them. It is, I admit, by no means uncommon, to see men of all descriptions forcing their horses close up to the object which has alarmed them, and some who allow their passions to overcome their cooler judgment, are apt to punish their horses very severely on such occasions. I confess, that when I was a lad, and have at times been riding at exercise by myself, I have often been guilty of this fault when my horse has started. To say nothing of the cruelty of such treatment, it unquestionably betrays a very defective judgment, for when horses are thus treated, they become alarmed from two causes—the object they see is the one cause, and the correction they dread from the rider is the other. When they are frightened, no matter where or at what object, they should be treated kindly and made much of, and they should be kept

wide in passing whatever they may have taken fright at. This sort of treatment, with a good horseman up, gives them confidence, and they soon come to pass boldly on, without noticing any thing they meet.

In breaking saddle horses for common use, such as chargers, hacks, or troop horses, it may be very proper to bring them boldly to face all objects; but in breaking racing colts, there is no such necessity, for when they are broke, and are on the road travelling as race-horses, they are almost invariably led, and horses when led, seldom become alarmed at objects they encounter on the road.

Colts, when brought sufficiently accustomed to the bustle and tumult of crowded places, so as not to be alarmed at any thing in or about them, may gradually omit frequenting those places. The long straps belonging to their saddles may be left off, and they should now be accustomed to wear their clothes at exercise as well as in the stable; not exactly with a view to keep them warm or to bring them light, but merely to prevent them from being alarmed in any way from their use.

It sometimes happens that a colt may have a little hereditary vice, or some few tricks, which may be traced to the same source, and it may be necessary when one of this description becomes unruly, to correct him. It is advisable that such a colt should have a good and patient, yet, at the same time, a determined horseman upon him; for when once he has been obliged to correct a colt of this sort for any thing

wrong (although he is not to punish or abuse him brutally) yet he must never give up the contest. He must thoroughly defeat the colt; but this should be effected with as few blows as possible, and a great deal may be done by patiently persevering with him and tiring him out. When the rider has carried his point, he may then make much of his colt.

The colts which are troublesome in this particular, are mostly the craving ones; and when such colts are put in training, they should, until their tempers are well known, always have good riding boys upon them. Such craving colts as have good and patient riders on them may, before their breaking is completed, be rode in spurs; but they are to be accustomed to them very gradually. They should be punished as little as possible with the spurs, and even then not rashly. Spurs should be used in such a manner as to make the colt understand that when they are applied to his sides, it is for the purpose of urging him on, or making him exert himself in getting forward at a faster pace. Light impetuous colts scarcely ever want them; yet they should all be trained to them before they are brought to post to try or to run; otherwise some colts, when stabbed sharply with spurs in severe running, may resent the application of them by kicking. Others, from such a circumstance, may shut up and go out. From either of these occurrences, a trial may be undecided or a race lost; and as I have just observed, this would then be the result of the

colt's not being gradually and properly trained to the use of the spurs.

As by this time we may fairly presume that their mouths are sufficiently sensible to the pressure of the last mentioned description of bit, and that their heads, when they are rode, are in proper place, plain snaffles or pelhams, or any sort of bridle, as occasion may require, may be put on them, and they may now be taken every day on the downs to exercise. Colts, breaking at Newmarket, should often be walked about on the flat among the different courses, and at times they should be made to leave each other and walk quietly away to different parts of the downs to exercise by themselves. It is highly necessary to accustom them thus early to leave each other, with a view more easily to preserve the tempers of the light, flighty, or delicate horses or mares, as in training it is at times necessary to change their system.

When they are leaving the downs, they should be walked home, followed by each other in line, up the Cambridge hill and along by the side of the rails, and when they have gone one hundred yards past the weighing stand at the end of the B. C. it may be as well to pull them up and walk them back again to the weighing stand, and let them remain there a few minutes. At other times, they may be brought home across the flat, passing the weighing stand at the turn of the lands; and at the distance of one hundred yards from it, they may be pulled up and walked back again to the stand. The riders may there dismount, and

make much of them for a short time. They may then mount them and walk them quietly by the side of the rails home to their stables.

During the meetings which are so frequent at Newmarket, all opportunities should be taken by the colt-breaker when the rails are open, to bring his colts home up between them by the crowd, passing the winning-post to where the horses usually pull up. The colts should be pulled up here, and walked back again to the weighing stand, and treated as before mentioned. They should afterwards be kept walking about among the crowd until the races are over; and this should be done every day during the meeting. The meetings being over, they may occasionally be walked out to Warren Heath, and here for a few days let them walk the different gallops; after which the colt breaker may teach them to follow each other in a canter for about half a mile up either of the gallops. When the colt breaker intends taking the colts out for a short gallop, he should be on a hack in front, so as to rate them off properly. I do not mean by rating them properly, that there is any great occasion to attend much to the pace they may choose to go off at. They may go from a walk into a trot, and from a trot into a canter, or they may go from a walk into a canter; this is of very little importance at present. But it may be necessary to caution the boys to keep fast hold of each colt's head, that is to say, to keep their heads up and in good place; and with any of them that are inclined to pull rather more determinedly than the rest, the reins

should be knotted at a well-proportioned length, so as to give the boy a good hold of his colt's head. Although these precautions may be necessary with some few of them, yet these few are not to be pulled at rashly, for this would not only make them pull more determinedly, but would induce them to go high and clamber in their work, which is a loss of time. When they are off, let them quickly measure their own stride, and as close to the ground as they like. To hold those that pull more resolutely than others, the boys should be directed, in pulling at them, to give and take, and thereby keep their mouths alive. In this manner they should be ordered to hold them in their exercise. It becomes necessary thus to direct such boys as may not be in the habit of riding young ones, and as they may be walking either way at the bottom of the Warren Heath near the gorse, each colt being at a proper distance from the one before him, the colt breaker may give the lads direction to urge them on after his hack, by pressing their legs and heels against the sides of those that may require this excitement; and he himself should, as he is getting towards the bottom of the gallop, rate his hack a little faster, so as to endeavour to get them all to come off in a canter as nearly as he can together. Never mind whether they take the right or the leg first; but previous to their commencing the gallop, the colt breaker should speak to the boys, and caution each to endeavour all he can to catch with the motion of his body the stride of his

colt as he is settling into a canter. Just at this time, the boys should be particularly still on them, and by no means pull rashly at them. Each colt having been pulled up at the end of this short gallop, they should be nearly in a line with each other. But where there are a number together, there may be one or two that pull more determinedly than the rest, and may pass those that are pulled up for a few lengths, before a boy can get a steady pull on such colt to stop him. To obviate this, it is advisable the next time they go out, to put up a more experienced rider on such colt. The whole of them being pulled up, they walk quietly about until they become cool and collected. They may then go to the troughs and take their water. They should here be made much of, particularly the light ones, as some of them may be alarmed from this little exertion, and will naturally look and stare about when at the troughs, and not like to take their water. Such of them as may do this, should be watered in the stable as soon as they enter it.

Most yearlings, being thoroughly well broke, and afterwards being allowed plenty of time to be at their exercise under the direction of an experienced training groom, until they are properly taught, will be sufficiently well trained to be tried for the lengths, they have to come in their trials.

Having now touched upon all the introductory matter connected with my subject, I take leave of the reader, proposing to pursue, in the second volume, the

system of training different race-horses more in detail; in which will be fully explained the particular mode of treatment to be adopted in feeding, watering, and working, according to the age, constitution, and temper of the horse.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON:
R. HODSON, PRINTER, 90, HOLBORN HILL, LONDON.